www.irLanguage.com

Reading & Vocabulary Development

Cause Effect

FOURTH EDITION

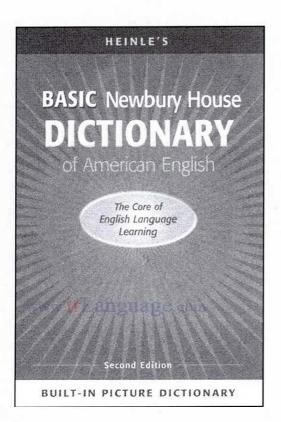
مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com

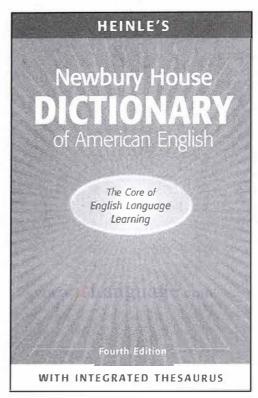




Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

Heinle's Newbury House Dictionaries





The ideal supplements for vocabulary development, dictionary activities, and collocation work! Use *Heinle's Newbury House Dictionaries* to build vocabulary and increase reading skills.

Heinle's Newbury House Dictionary with Integrated Thesaurus

Softcover with CD-ROM....0-8384-2657-3 Hardcover0-8837-7017-2

Heinle's Basic Newbury House Dictionary

Softcover0-8384-2656-5 Hardcover0-7593-9808-9

Heinle's Newbury House Dictionary CD-ROM (Dual Platform)

0-8384-2661-1

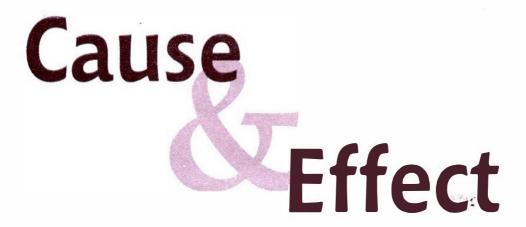
The Heinle Picture Dictionary

0-8384-4400-8

3



Reading & Vocabulary Development



Fourth Edition

Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان به صورت نشر برخط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است. کپی برداری از آن خلاف قانون، شرع و اخلاق است و شامل پیگرد خواهد شد.

> مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com





Reading & Vocabulary Development 3: Cause & Effect, Fourth Edition Patricia Ackert and Linda Lee

Publisher, Adult and Academic ESL:

James W. Brown

Senior Acquisitions Editor: Sherrise Roehr Director of Development: Anita Raducanu

Development Editor: Tom Jefferies **Editorial Assistant:** Katherine Reilly

Senior Production Editor: Maryellen E. Killeen

Director of Marketing: Amy Mabley **Marketing Manager:** Laura Needham

Senior Print Buyer: Mary Beth Hennebury Compositor: Pre-Press Company, Inc.

Project Manager: Sally Lifland, Lifland et al.,

Bookmakers

Photo Researcher: Gail Magin

Illustrator: Barry Burns
Cover Designer: Ha Ngyuen
Text Designer: Quica Ostrander
Printer: Edwards Brothers

Copyright © 2006 by Thomson Heinle, a part of The Thomson Corporation. Thomson, Heinle and the Thomson logo are trademarks used herein under license.

All rights reserved. No part of this work covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, Web distribution or information storage and retrieval systems—without the written permission of the publisher.

Trademark and Copyright 2004 Cable News Network LP, LLLP. A Time Warner Company. All Rights Reserved. Licensed by Turner Learning, Inc. A Time Warner Company. All Rights Reserved.

Printed in the United States of America 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 07

For more information contact Heinle, 25 Thomson Place, Boston, Massachusetts 02210 USA, or you can visit our Internet site at http://www.elt.thomson.com

For permission to use material from this text or product contact us:

Tel

1-800-730-2214

Fax 1-800-730-2215

Web www.th

www.thomsonrights.com

ISBN 13 : 978-1-4130-0416-8 ISBN 10 : 1-4130-0416-4

ISE ISBN 13 : 978-1-4130-0447-2 ISE ISBN 10 : 1-4130-0447-4

Library of Congress Control Number: 2005921000

Contents

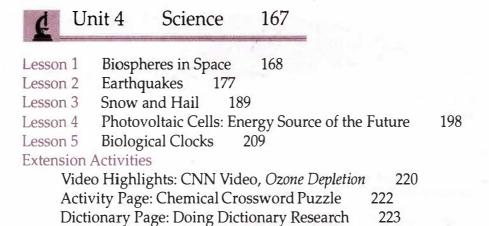
To the Instructor v Acknowledgments ix

Uni	t 1 Explorers 1
Lesson 1	Burke and Wills: Across Australia 2
Lesson 2	Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet 10
Lesson 3	Vitus Bering: Across Siberia to North America 20
Lesson 4	Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole 29
Lesson 5	Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration 40
Extension Ac	tivities
Video	Highlights: CNN Video, Deep Sea Exploration 50
Activit	ty Page: Adventure Trail 52
	nary Page: Understanding Definitions 53

World Issues Unit 2 55 Lesson 1 World Population Growth 56 Changes in the Family 68 Lesson 2 Lesson 3 Women and Change 78 Lesson 4 Rain Forests Lesson 5 98 The Garbage Project **Extension Activities** Video Highlights: CNN Video, Lalita's Story 107 Activity Page: Crossword Puzzle Dictionary Page: Working with Word Forms 110

Unit 3 A Mishmash, or Hodgepodge 111

13, 20, 24				
Lesson 1	Roadrunners 112			
Lesson 2	Afraid to Fly 122			
Lesson 3	Languages and Language Diversity 132			
Lesson 4	Skyscrapers 143			
Lesson 5	Left-Handedness 153			
Extension A	Activities			
Video Highlights: CNN Video, The Green Skyscraper 163				
Activity Page: Familiar Phrases 165				
Dictionary Page: Understanding Grammar Codes 166				



*

Unit 5 Medicine and Health

225

Lesson 1	Headaches 226
Lesson 2	Sleep and Dreams 236
Lesson 3	Health Care and Epidemics 246
Lesson 4	Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers 258
Lesson 5	Cholesterol and Heart Disease 268
Extension A	Activities
Video	Highlights: CNN Video, The Singing Doctor 281
Activ	ity Page: Who Said What? 283
Dictio	onary Page: Learning About Word Stress 285

Vocabulary 287 Skills Index 291

To the Instructor

Reading & Vocabulary Development 3: Cause & Effect is a best-selling beginning reading skills text designed for students of English as a second or foreign language who have a basic vocabulary in English of about 1,300 words. This text teaches about 700 more words.

Cause & Effect is one in a series of reading skills texts. The complete series has been designed to meet the needs of students from the beginning to the high intermediate levels and includes the following:

Reading & Vocabulary Development 1: Facts & Figures

Reading & Vocabulary Development 2: Thoughts & Notions

Reading & Vocabulary Development 3: Cause & Effect

Reading & Vocabulary Development 4: Concepts & Comments

In addition to the student text, an answer key, VHS, DVD, audio cassette, and audio CD are also available. *Cause & Effect* uses the following methodology:

- Theme-based approach to reading. Each of the five units has a theme such as world issues, science, or health.
- Systematic presentation and recycling of vocabulary. One of the primary tasks of students is developing a useful and personally relevant vocabulary base. In Cause & Effect, up to 24 words are introduced in each lesson. These words appear in boldface type. Those underlined are illustrated or glossed in the margin. All of the new vocabulary items are used several times in the lesson, and then are systematically recycled throughout the text.
- **Pedagogical design.** The central goal of *Cause & Effect* is to help students develop the critical reading skills they will need for academic, personal, and/or career purposes. By any standard, the range of exercise types in *Cause & Effect* is rich and varied. This text provides students with practice in comprehension, building vocabulary, making inferences, finding the main idea, determining cause and effect, scanning, summarizing, paraphrasing, understanding

the sequence of events, and learning to work more effectively with two-word verbs, compound words, connecting words, and noun substitutes.



Organization of Cause & Effect

Cause & Effect is organized into five units. Each unit contains five lessons packed with exercises and activities.

- "Before You Read" Questions. These pre-reading questions provide a motivation for reading the text.
- Context Clues. A context clue exercise at the beginning of each lesson introduces some of the vocabulary for the following lesson. This section is designed to pre-teach particularly important vocabulary items.
- **Vocabulary**. The first two exercises give practice with new words in a different context but with the same meaning.
- **Vocabulary Review.** Vocabulary items are used in subsequent texts and exercises to give additional review. They are fill-ins or matching synonyms and antonyms.
- Comprehension. First is a set of true/false, true/false/not enough information, or multiple choice questions. Then come comprehension questions, which include inference and discussion questions. The comprehension questions may also be given as written assignments.
- Main Idea. Students must choose the main idea of a paragraph from three possibilities.
- Word Study. A selection of word study exercises is provided at the end of each lesson. It reinforces structural points, such as verb forms, two-word verbs, and articles, that the students are learning in other classes. It also gives spelling rules for noun plurals and verb endings. Later units have charts of word forms. The exercises are not intended to be complete explanations and practice of the grammar points.
 - Writing. Each lesson closes with a writing exercise.

 Extension Activities. Each unit ends with a set of highinterest, interactive tasks to help students practice the new vocabulary and the skills they have learned in more open-ended contexts.

CNN Video Highlights—The highlight of each set of extension activities is a short video-based lesson centered on a stimulating, authentic clip from the CNN video archives. Each video lesson follows the same sequence of activities:

Before You Watch encourages students to recall background knowledge based on their own experiences or from information presented in the readings.

As You Watch asks students to watch for general information such as the topic of the clip.

After You Watch gets the students to expand on the main points of the video by establishing further connections to the reading passages, their own experiences, and their ideas and opinions.

Activity Page—Games found on this page encourage students to practice the vocabulary and structures found in that unit's lessons in a relaxed, open-ended way.

Dictionary Page—Exercises on this page offer students practice with dictionary skills based on entries from *The Newbury House Dictionary of American English*.

• **Skills Index.** This index provides teachers and students with a handy reference for all of the reading and writing skills introduced in *Cause & Effect*, as well as all of the grammatical structures found in the text.



New to This Edition

The best-selling reading series just got better! The fourth edition of *Cause & Effect* contains new readings, new pedagogy, and new ancillaries.

- Four fresh new readings engage students in fascinating new topics. The new readings for this edition are as follows:
 - Unit 1, Lesson 5: Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration
 - Unit 2, Lesson 5: The Garbage Project
 - Unit 3, Lesson 3: Languages and Language Diversity
 - Unit 5, Lesson 4: Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers
- Thoroughly updated and checked for factual accuracy, each reading has been revised to include level-appropriate structures and vocabulary.
- New pedagogical design, photos, and illustrations aid student comprehension and ease navigation through the text.
- *ExamView*® *Pro* test-generating software allows instructors to create custom tests and quizzes.
- A new website (found at http://elt.thomson.com/ readingandvocabulary) features vocabulary flashcards, crossword puzzles, quizzes, and more to help students review for tests.

Acknowledgments

The authors and publisher would like to thank the following individuals who offered helpful feedback and suggestions for the revision of the *Reading & Vocabulary Development* series:

Brian Altano—Bergen Community College, Paramus, NJ

Benjamin Deleon—Delano High School, Delano, CA

Elaine Dow—Quinsigamond Community College, Worcester, MA

Julia Karet—Chaffey College, Rancho Cucamonga, CA

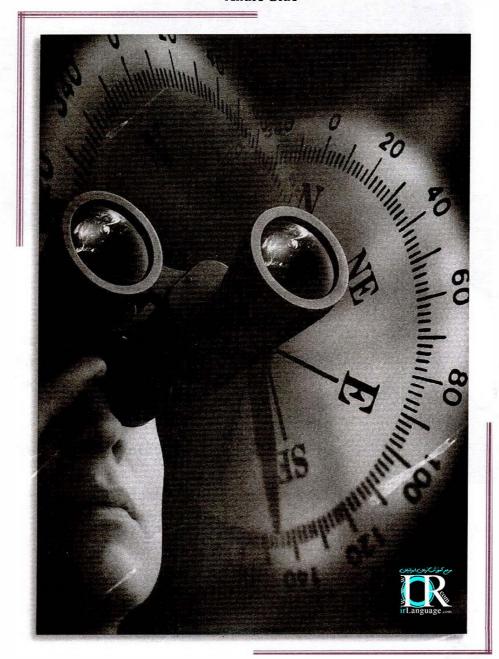
Jane Sitko—Edmonds Community College, Lynnwood, WA

Explorers

unit

One doesn't discover new lands without consenting to lose sight of the shore for a very long time.

—André Gide

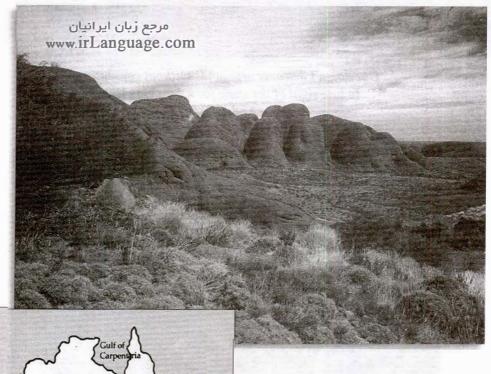


مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com

lesson

Burke and Wills: Across Australia

1



© Howard Davies./CORBIS

Before You Read

- 1. What information about Australia do the map and the photograph give you?
- 2. Is Australia larger or smaller than your country?
- 3. What else do you know about Australia?

AUSTRALIA

SOUTHERN OCEAN

TIM OR SEA

PACIFIC

OCEAN

1 Burke and Wills: Across Australia



Australia is a huge country, and the outback (the Australian word for the <u>interior</u> of the country) is desert. In some years, it rains only eight centimeters in the outback, but in other years, rainstorms <u>turn</u> the desert <u>into</u> sandy swamps.

Until the eighteenth century, only **aborigines** lived in Australia. These are the first people who lived in Australia. When Europeans went there to live, they **built** towns on the coast. However, in the 1850s, people began thinking more about the interior.

In 1860, Robert O'Hara Burke, a police officer from Ireland, was <u>chosen</u> to lead an <u>expedition</u> across the continent from south to north. He took with him William John Wills and eleven other men, camels, horses, and enough <u>supplies</u> for a year and a half. They left Melbourne for the Gulf of Carpentaria on

The expedition had problems from the beginning.
Burke had no experience in the outback. The men fought
and would not follow <u>orders.</u> Twice they left some of
their supplies so that they could move faster and later
sent one of the men, William Wright, back for them.

August 20, winter in the southern <u>hemisphere</u>.

Finally, a small group led by Burke moved on ahead of the others to a river named Cooper's Creek and set up their base camp. They were halfway across the continent, but it was summer now, with very hot weather and sandstorms.

They waited a month for Wright, and then Burke decided that four from his small group, with three months' supplies, should travel the 1,250 kilometers to the north coast as quickly as possible. They told the others to wait for them at Cooper's Creek.

The journey across the desert was very difficult, but at the end of January, they reached the Flinders River inside; away from the coast

turn into = change (something); become

past participle of choose

food and other necessary things

half of the Earth or any other sphere

commands; directions

at last



near the Gulf of Carpentaria. They started their return journey, but now it was the rainy season and traveling was slow and even more difficult than on their trip north. They did not have enough food, and the men became hungry and sick. Then one of them died. Some
 of the camels died or were killed for food.

Finally, on April 21, they arrived back at Cooper's Creek, only to find that no one was there. The rest of the expedition had left the day before because they thought Burke must be dead.

The men continued south, but without enough food, both Burke and Wills died. Aborigines helped the last man who was still alive, and a <u>search party</u> found him in September 1861. He was half crazy from hunger and **loneliness.**

a group of people who look for someone who is lost

There were many reasons that the expedition did not go as planned. It had an inexperienced leader, the men made bad decisions, some did not follow orders, and they did not **get along.** But it was the first expedition to cross Australia, and Burke and Wills are still known as

be friendly; not fight

55 heroes of exploration.



a

Vocabulary

In this book, difficult words are repeated several times in the exercises. These words are also repeated and reviewed in other lessons. It is not necessary to list new English words with their meanings in your own language. You will learn them just by practicing. In each lesson, when you read the text the first time, underline the words you don't know. Then you can give yourself a test when you finish the lesson. Look at the words you underlined and see if you understand them. If you don't know them yet, this is the time to memorize them.

In the Vocabulary exercises in this book, write the correct word in each blank. Use a word only once. Use capital letters where they are necessary.

	exploration finally		hemisphere	halfway loneliness
	aborigines		•	
1.	The captain of a sh			
	follow them.			
2.	In baseball, a playe	r hits the ball and	runs to first	
3.	The first Australian	s are called	ونجا وموريق	
4.	Most of the Earth h	as been explored.	Now we are in t	he age of space
		_, searching for m	nore information	about the stars, the
	moon, and other pl	anets besides Eart	h.	
5.	Kumiko	well w	ith everyone. Sh	e is always nice and
	never fights with pe	eople.		
6.	We	our new ho	me from the woo	od and stone on
	our land.			
7.		_is a common fee	eling when you a	ire far from your
	friends and family.			
8.	Asia is in the northe	ern		
9.	The writer Jane Aus	sten said, "	do	oings never
	prosper." I think she	e meant that it's ir	nportant to com	plete things.
10.	People who win in	the Olympic Gam	es are	in
	their countries			

b Vocabulary

Do	Do this exercise the same way you did Exercise a.				
	chosen	expedition	party	explored	
	build	interior	got along	finally	
	searching	A A	•		
1.	Burke and Wills l	ed an	into the i	nterior of Australia.	
2.	The explorer Chr	istopher Columbus	was	for a new	
	way to go to Indi	a.			
3.	Burke and Wills .		_ the interior of A	ustralia.	
4.	Birds like to live	n	because there	e is a lot of water	
	and food.				
5.	We use one kind	of paint for the		of a house and	
	another kind for	the exterior.			
6.	After three days	of driving, I	arr	ived at the coast.	
7.	A search	was so	ent to find the Bu	rke and	
	Wills expedition.				
8.	The president of t	the United States is		by the people	
	who vote.				
9.	The secretary ord	ered paper, pens, a	nd other	for	
	the office.				
10.	Carlos started to s	study hard, and he	eventually	a	
	good student.				



C True/False

Write **T** if the sentence is true. Write **F** if it is false. If a sentence is false, change it to make it true or explain why it is false. An asterisk (*) before an item means that the answer is either an **inference** or an **opinion**. You cannot find the answer in a sentence in the text. You have to think about the information in the text and things you already know and then decide on the answer.

	The first Europeans in Australia built villages in the outback
	because there were too many aborigines on the coast.
	The Burke and Wills expedition crossed Australia from south
	to north.
;	December is a summer month in Australia.
	Much of the interior of Australia is swampy all year long.
	Eleven men crossed Australia with Burke and Wills.
X	Burke and Wills did not have enough food for their journey back
	to Cooper's Creek because the rain slowed them down.
*	The aborigines could help the last man still alive because they
	understood how to live in the desert.
	Burke was a good leader for this expedition



Comprehension Questions

Answer these questions in complete sentences. An asterisk (*) means that the answer is either an **inference** or an **opinion**. You cannot find the exact answer in the text.

- 1. Where did the first Europeans live when they went to Australia?
- *2. Why were camels good animals for this expedition?
- 3. Why did the men leave some of their supplies behind?
- 4. Why was it difficult to travel in the interior of Australia?
- 5. What happened to some of the camels?
- 6. Give two reasons why this expedition had so many problems.
- *7. Do you think Burke and Wills should be called heroes of exploration? Why?





Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 18-22)?

- a. Robert Burke led this expedition.
- b. The expedition had many problems.
- c. Burke had no experience in the outback.



Two-Word Verbs

English has many two-word verbs. Each of the two words is easy, but when they are put together, they mean something different. There is often no way to guess what they mean. You have to learn each one.

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

	turn into	=	change (something)	into; become
	get along (with)	=	not fight; be friendly	-1
	break down	=	stop going or working	ng (often said about a car)
	call on	=	ask (someone) to spe student to speak)	eak (as when a teacher asks a
	put away	=	put (something) in the	he place where it belongs
1.	Our washing mad	chir	ne	_ yesterday, and I couldn't finish
	washing my cloth	ies.		
2.	Tommy and his li	ttle	brother don't	very well. They
	fight about somet	hin	g almost every day.	
3.	Ali knew the answ	wer	when the teacher	him.
4.	It was rainy this r	nor	ning, but now it has _	a beautiful
	day.			
5.	Mary doesn't usu	ally	7	her clothes. She just leaves
	them on a chair o	r th	e bed.	- 1



Articles: A, An, The

There are so many rules about articles that it is easier just to get used to them by practicing than to learn all the rules. However, you will learn a few of the rules later in this book.

Here are some sentences or parts of sentences from the text. Put an article in the blank if it is necessary.

1.	In other years, rainstorms turn desert into sandy swamps.
2.	Until eighteenth century, only aborigines lived in Australia.
3.	In 1860, Robert O'Hara Burke, police officer from Ireland,
	was chosen to lead expedition across continent from south
	to north.
4.	He took with him William John Wills and eleven other men, camels,
	horses, and enough supplies for year and half.
5.	expedition had problems from beginning.
6.	men fought and would not follow orders.
h	Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are the last person still alive from the Burke and Wills expedition. It is September 1861, and the search party has just found you. Tell them what happened to you.
- 2. You are the leader of another expedition across Australia. Explain what you will do differently.

lesson

2

Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet





Before You Read

- 1. What do you know about the history and geography of Tibet?
- 2. What information does the photograph give you about Alexandra David-Neel?
- 3. Alexandra David-Neel traveled alone to Tibet in the early twentieth century. What do you think her goal was?



Context Clues

www.irLanguage.com

It is not necessary to look up every new word in the dictionary. You can often tell what a word means from the sentence it is in or from the sentences after it. For example, the word **aborigines** in line 6 on page 3 is explained in the next sentence. Take a look. What are aborigines? Always look for context clues when you are reading. Try not to look up every new word in your dictionary.

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means. Do all of the Context Clues exercises in the book this way.

- 1. David-Neel was very unhappy when she was a child. She **escaped** her unhappiness by reading books on adventure and travel.
- 2. Later, she studied the Buddhist religion and wrote **articles** and books about it.
- 3. In 1903, she started working as a **journalist**, writing articles about Asia and Buddhism for English and French magazines and newspapers.
- 4. She wrote her husband long letters full of **details** about her travels.
- 5. For centuries, Tibet was a **secret** and mysterious place to the rest of the world. Only a few foreigners were able to visit the area.



2 Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet



Tibet has been a **secret** and mysterious place to the rest of the world for several centuries. It is on a high plateau in Asia, surrounded by even higher mountains, and only a few foreigners were able to cross its **borders** until recently.

One of these foreigners was a French woman named Alexandra David-Neel (1868–1969). She traveled by herself in India, China, and Tibet. She studied the Buddhist religion, wrote articles and books about it, and collected ancient Buddhist books. She also became 10 a Buddhist herself.

legal lines between countries

David-Neel always said she had an unhappy childhood. She escaped her unhappiness by reading books on adventure and travel. She ran away from school several times and even ran away to England 15 when she was only 16.

left without telling anyone

She was a singer for several years, but in 1903 she started working as a journalist, writing articles about Asia and Buddhism for English and French magazines and newspapers. The next year, when she was 37, she married 20 Philippe-François Neel. It was an unusual marriage. After five days together, they moved to different cities and never lived together again. Yet he supported her all his life, and she wrote him hundreds of long letters full of details about her travels.

gave (her) money to live on

She traveled all over Europe and North Africa, but she went to India in 1911 to study Buddhism, and then her real travels began. She traveled in India and also in Nepal and Sikkim, the small countries north of India in the Himalaya Mountains, but her goal was Tibet. She 30 continued to study Buddhism and learned to speak Tibetan. She traveled to villages and religious centers, with only an interpreter and a few men to carry her camping equipment. For several months, she lived in a cave in Sikkim and studied Buddhism and the Tibetan



cave



25

language. Then she **adopted** a 15-year-old Sikkimese boy to travel with her. He <u>remained</u> with her until his death at the age of 55.

For the next seven years, she traveled in remote
areas of China. These were years of civil war in China,
and she was often in danger. She traveled for
thousands of kilometers on horseback with only a few
men to help her—through desert heat and sandstorms
and the rain, snow, and freezing temperatures of the
colder areas.

In 1924, David-Neel was 56 years old. She darkened her skin and dressed as an old <u>beggar</u>. She carried only a beggar's bowl and a backpack and traveled through hot lowlands and snowy mountain passes until she reached the border of Tibet. Because she spoke Tibetan so well, she was able to cross the border and reach the famous city of Lhasa without anyone knowing that she was European and forbidden to be there. It was often freezing cold, and sometimes there wasn't enough food. Sometimes she was sick, and once she nearly died. This was the most dangerous of all her journeys, but she reached her goal and collected more information about Tibetan Buddhism.

She returned to France in 1925. She spent several years writing about her <u>research</u> and adventures and translating ancient Tibetan religious books. When she was 66, she returned to China and the Tibetan border area for ten years. In 1944, the Second World War reached even that remote area, and at the age of 76, she walked for days, sometimes without food, until she was able to reach a place from which she could fly to India and then home to France. She continued writing and translating until she died, just seven weeks before her 101st birthday.

Most explorers traveled to discover and map new places. David-Neel went to do research on Buddhism. She said that freedom was the most important thing in life for her, and, <u>like</u> many other explorers, she lived a dangerous, exciting, free life.

stayed

far from towns
war between people
in the same country



search for new information

similar to



a Vocabulary

W	rite the correct wor	d in each blank. Use	a word only once, i	and use capital letters if
the	ey are necessary.			
	civil war	temperature	like	border
	childhood		secret	
	caves	journalist	remote	remained
1	. We didn't tell h	im about his birthd	lay party. We war	nted it to be
	a	·		
2.	. There is an inter	resting	in the n	ewspaper today
	about Tibet.			
3.	You can find		asking for money	in most countries.
4.	She lived in Asi	a when she was an	adult, but she sp	ent her
		in England.		
5.	Some ancient N	orth Americans live	ed in	. Others
	built houses.			
6.	Normal body _		is 98.6 degrees F	ahrenheit.
7.	She went to Ind	ia in 1911 and		there for several years
8.	In the United St	ates, the northern s	states and the sou	thern states fought a
		that lasted from	om 1861 to 1865.	
9.	The Himalayas	are on the	betw	veen China and India
10.	Α	collects info	ormation and the	n writes articles about
	it for magazines	and newspapers.		
\$60000				
b	Vocabulary			
			(, 1	
			't know as you read	the text, and then test
you	rself when you fin		1:1	1
	remote details	escaped surrounded	like	real
	adopted	research	support borders	journalist ran away from
1	1			name is Elizabeth.
۷.		ol in hot weather be	ecause it is	by
	big trees.			



3.	Nepal, libet, is in the Himalaya Mountains.
4.	Mr. and Mrs. Thompson a baby because they
	couldn't have children of their own.
5.	He school when he was 15 years old and joined
	the navy.
6.	Most English paragraphs have a main idea and supporting
7.	Parents usually their children until the children
	finish school. The parents pay for everything the children need.
8.	Dr. Garcia is doing for space exploration.
9.	Her friends live in a part of Alaska. The only way to
	get there is
	by plane.
10.	A snake from the zoo last night. If you see it, call the
	police immediately.
925	
C	Multiple Choice
	Comment
	cle the letter of the best answer. An asterisk (*) means that the answer is an
-	rence or opinion. You cannot find the answer in a sentence in the text.
1.	Alexandra David-Neel went to Asia to
	a. study Buddhism
	b. lead an expedition
	c. adopt a son When she was a shild, she read to
۷.	When she was a child, she read to a. become a Buddhist
	b. escape her unhappiness
	c. learn about Europe
3.	After she got married,
	a. she lived in Europe with her husband for several years
	b. her husband supported her
	c. her husband traveled in Europe with her
	It is possible that she
	a. took photographs during her travels
	b. had a car when she lived in a cave
	c. spoke Tibetan to her Indian friends

- 5. The place she wanted most to visit was _____.
 - a. India
 - b. China
 - c. Tibet
- 6. Her travels in China were dangerous because _____
 - a. there was a civil war
 - b. she was traveling on horseback
 - c. she was a beggar
- 7. David-Neel said that _____
 - a. she wasn't afraid of danger
 - b. freedom was very important to her
 - c. she wanted her husband to travel with her

d

Comprehension Questions

Always answer the comprehension questions with complete sentences.

- 1. Why is Tibet a mysterious place?
- *2. Why did David-Neel run away from school?
- 3. What is a journalist?
- 4. What was unusual about her marriage?
- 5. What did she do when she was living in a cave?
- 6. What does remote areas mean?
- 7. Why didn't the Tibetans know she was a foreigner?
- 8. What kind of work did she do after her last trip?
- *9. Do you think she lived a free life? Why?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 11–15)?

- a. David-Neel read books on travel and adventure.
- b. David-Neel ran away from school several times.
- c. David-Neel had an unhappy childhood.





Choose a word form from line 1 of the chart to use in sentence 1, and so on. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	adopt	adoption	adopted	
2.	surround	surroundings	surrounding	
3.	beg	beggar		
4.		hero	heroic	heroically
5.	remain	remainder remains	remaining	
6.	supply	supply	supplied	
7.	explore	exploration		
8.	secrete	secret	secretive	secretly
9.		reality	real	really
10.	choose	choice	choice	

1.	Many children want to meet their birth parents.						
2.	Dan drove so fast on his vacation trip that he hardly saw his						
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						
3.	Small children often to go with their parents when						
	the parents go out at night.						
4.	. Jumping into the freezing water to save the child was a						
	action.						
5.	They ate half the chicken and put the in the						
	refrigerator for the next day.						
6.	The company was unable to most of the things						
	we ordered.						
7.	Are you more interested in the of outer space or the						
	Earth's oceans?						



8. I don't know why my children are being so today.
Usually they like to tell me where they are going.
9. Can you help me? I'm having trouble with
this computer.
10. I can't decide which movie to see. You make the
Articles
A and an are used to show that the noun after it is one of a group.
John Burke was an explorer. (He was one of many explorers throughout history.)
Maria is a student. (She is one of many students in the world.)
I took an apple out of the refrigerator. (It is one of many apples in the world
The is used to show that the noun is one special, particular, specific case of the noun or nouns.
John Burke and William John Wills were the first explorers to cross Austral
Maria is the best student in the class.
I took the apple out of the refrigerator. (There was only one apple in the refrigerator.)
Put the right article in the blanks.
1. Australia is huge country.
2 journalist who wrote this article is a friend of mine.
3. David-Neel was journalist.
4. Please close door.



5. Her office is _____ first one on the left.

7. Who was _____ worst teacher you ever had?

6. _____ professor called you today, but I don't know who it was.



Compound Words

Compound words are common in English. They are two words put together, and the meaning of the compound word is related to the meanings of the two words. They are not like two-word verbs, whose meaning is different from the meaning of each word by itself.

Put these compound words in the right blanks in the sentences below.

	horseback mailbox	sandstorm sidewalk	snowstorm doorbell	keyhole weekend				
1.	Barbara couldn't drive to her parents' house last week because there was a							
	bad	, and it v	vas very cold.					
2.	Abdullah looks in	his	every day	, and he usually finds				
	a letter.							
3.	A is a place for people to walk at the side of the stree							
4.	When you unlock a door, you put your key in the							
5.	The rang, and Susan went to open the door.							
6.	Did you ever go _		riding?					
	د المام ما ۱۸۷۰ند:							



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are Alexandra David-Neel. Write a letter to your husband. Describe one or two of your adventures in some detail. Add your own ideas about what you saw, heard, tasted, touched, or smelled.
- 2. Describe an adventure you had or an unusual trip you took. Use details about what you saw, heard, tasted, touched, or smelled.

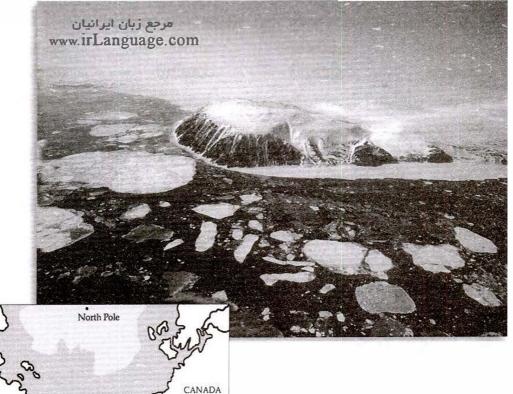


lesson

3

RUSSIAN FEDERATION

Vitus Bering: Across Siberia to North America



UNITED

Jacques Langevin/CORBIS SYGMA

Before You Read

- 1. How can you get from Siberia to Alaska?
- 2. What is the name of the body of water between Siberia and Alaska?
- 3. Which are longer in Siberia and Alaska, winters or summers?



Context Clues

You can often guess the meaning of a word from the sentence, even if the sentence doesn't explain the word exactly. For example, in this lesson, one sentence says, "They lost a lot of food when one of the ships sank in a storm." What could a storm do to a ship so that the food was lost? The ship probably went down into the water to the bottom of the ocean. When you can guess easily what a word means from the sentence, don't look up the word in your dictionary.

Now practice with these new words from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each **bold** word means.

- 1. Vitus Bering wanted to explore the east coast of Siberia and to find out if Asia and North America were **joined**.
- 2. Bering made careful plans for his trip, but there were many **delays.** Because of this, he had only one summer to explore the area instead of two years.
- 3. Bering's expedition **gathered** important scientific information about the interior of Siberia.
- 4. When scientists read Bering's reports, they **realized** that he was a great explorer.
- 5. The water between Siberia and Alaska is now called the Bering Sea to **remind** us of this great explorer.



Vitus Bering: Across Siberia to North America



In 1733, the most complete scientific expedition in history up to that time left St. Petersburg, Russia. The goal of the expedition was to explore the east coast of Siberia and to find out if Asia and North America were 5 **joined.** The scientists planned to report on everything: the geography, climate, plants, animals, and customs and languages of the Siberian people.

The expedition had to cross Siberia in order to reach the Pacific Ocean. Vitus Bering, the leader of the whole 10 expedition, left St. Petersburg with almost 600 people. The group **included** a few scientists, **skilled** workers of all kinds, soldiers, and sailors. Alexei Chirikov left later, with most of the scientists and **tons** of supplies.

It took seven years for Bering's and Chirikov's groups to cross Siberia. They traveled mostly in flat-bottomed boats on the rivers. Bering's group spent a year in Tobolsk, where they built a ship and explored the Ob River. They continued to Yakutsk, where they spent four years. Yakutsk was only a small village and there were 20 many people in the expedition, so they had to build their own buildings. They also built boats and explored the Lena River. Then they moved on to Okhotsk on the eastern coast. It took two more years to build ships so that they could explore and map the east coast.

Bering made careful plans, but there were always problems. For example, they lost a lot of their food when one of the ships sank in a storm. But finally, their two ships started for North America. They had only one summer instead of two years for their explorations 30 because of the many problems and delays. And summers are short in the north.

There was more bad luck. There were storms, and the two ships lost contact, but at last the sailors on

connected the way parts of a place are positioned within it

to

had in it people in the military unit of measurement; in the U.S., 2,000 pounds = 1 ton



25

Bering's ship saw mountains a short distance across the sea. This **proved** that North America and Asia were two **separate** continents.

different

Their problems continued. Their water supply was low, but when the men went **ashore** in Alaska, they got water that was a little salty. Many of the men were sick from scurvy, a disease caused by the <u>lack</u> of **vitamin** C. When they drank the salty water, they became even sicker. Then they started dying, one after another.

not having enough

As the ship sailed south, back toward Okhotsk, it became lost in storms. Finally, a storm drove it onto a small island, and the men knew their ship could not sail again. They were in a place with no trees, but there were birds and animals for food, and **fresh** water to drink. However, it was too late for many of them. Men continued to die from scurvy, and on December 8, 1741, Bering died and was buried on the island that is now named for him. When spring came, the few remaining men were able to build a small ship from the wood in

By this time, the Russian government had lost interest in the North Pacific. Bering's reports were sent back to St. Petersburg and forgotten. Decades later, people realized that Bering was a great explorer. His expedition gathered important scientific information about the interior of Siberia, made maps of the eastern coast, and discovered a new part of North America. Today, we have the Bering Sea between Siberia and Alaska to remind us of the leader of this great scientific expedition.

the old one and leave the island.

periods of ten years

make (us) remember



Vocabulary

-			included remind	_					
	1. The dancers got in a circle and hands.								
2. Did you study the of your country in school?									
3. Mr. and Mrs. Baker drive to work in cars b									
	_	rk in differen	•		100				
	4. Please me to buy some bread, or I might forget.								
5.	5. In some restaurants, the waiter's or waitress's tip is								
	in the bill. In others, you leave it separately.								
6.	Two		equals 4	,000 U.S. pou	ınds.				
7.	There w	ill be a short		beca	use the chem	nistry			
	professo	r needs to ge	t the equipme	ent ready.					
8.	He didn	′t	wh	at time it wa	s, and he go	t to class late.			
			have to wear						
10.	Burke's	expedition fa	iled partly be	cause of his		of			
10. Burke's expedition failed partly because of his of experience in the Australian outback.									
	-								
b	Vocat	oulary							
-		•	decade	in order to		0			
			skilled	1					
1.	Ali is stu	dying Englis	h	go	to an Americ	can university			
	, ,					nd and not flat			
3.	Ann		up her b	ooks and pap	pers and left	the library.			
4.	4. Scurvy is caused by a lack of C. It was a problem								
long ocean trips because sailors didn't have fruit and vegetables									
5.	5. Haiti and the Dominican Republic are parts of the same island, but they								
	are		countries.						
6.	A century is 100 years. A is 10 years.								
	Electricians and mechanics are workers.								
	3. After a half hour in the water, the children walked								
	and dried off.								

9. People cannot drink s	ea water. They need	water.
10. This book	a table of contents and a	map.
C Vocabulary Revie	w: Definitions	
Match the words with their is second column in the correct	neaning. Write the letter of the definit blank.	tion from the
1. hemisphere	a. not fight	
2. border	b. study	
3. remain	c. at last	
4. get along	d. inside	
5. research	e. half of the earth	
6. interior	f. isolated	
7. finally	g. line between two countries	
8. remote	h. writer for magazines	
9. turn into	i. become	
10. journalist	j. stay	
d True/False/Not En	ough Information	
information in the text for yo	e, F if it is false, and NI if there is not u to decide. Change the false sentences false. Do all of the True/False exercis	s to make them
1. Bering left St. Pe	etersburg ahead of Chirikov.	
2. It took them sev	ven years to cross Siberia because the	hey were
traveling on hor	rseback.	
3. Vitus Bering wa	s from St. Petersburg.	
4. Bering spent tw	o years exploring the east coast of	Siberia.
*5. Bering's and Bu	rke's expeditions were similar.	
6. Bering's men fo	und Eskimos in Alaska.	
7. Scurvy is caused	d by a lack of vitamin C.	
8. Alaska belonged	d to the United States at the time of	f
Bering's expedit	tion	





Comprehension Questions

Paraphrase your answers. This means that you should answer the questions in your own words instead of using the exact words from the text.

- 1. Why was Bering's trip called a scientific expedition?
- 2. What did the men on the expedition do in Tobolsk?
- 3. Where did they stay longer, in Tobolsk or in Yakutsk?
- *4. Why did the expedition have to build boats?
- 5. How did the two ships lose contact in the Pacific Ocean?
- 6. Why did the men on the island continue to die even when they had food and water?
- *7. Is scurvy a problem on ships today? Why or why not?
- *8. When Bering's expedition returned to St. Petersburg, were they welcomed as national heroes? Why or why not?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 14–19)?

- a. It took seven years to cross Siberia.
- b. The expedition explored two rivers.
- c. The expedition built their own village in Yakutsk.



Reading

How carefully should you read something? How fast should you read? The answer depends on what you are reading. Sometimes you need to read things slowly and carefully. At other times, you can read quickly, and at still other times, you can read at an average speed.

How would you read each thing below? Check (\checkmark) the box for slowly and carefully, at an average speed, or quickly.

	Slowly and	At an Average	
	Carefully	Speed	Quickly
 A letter from your parents A letter from your bank 			

	and Carefully	At an Average Speed	Quickly
3. The textbook for a difficult science class			
4. An exciting mystery story			
5. The directions on an important exam			
6. A magazine article about an	100	والع	lu uu
interesting person	contain to		

Some students like to read the whole text quickly to get the general idea. Others like to start at the beginning and read each sentence carefully. You can choose the best way for you to start reading a lesson. After that, you probably need to read the lesson two or three more times. When you come to a word you don't know, read the sentence again or even three times, to help you remember the word. It is never necessary to memorize sentences or paragraphs. That is not the way to study reading.

If the text is very difficult for you, read the first paragraph two or three times, then the second, and so on. Then read the whole text from beginning to end. Then you might want to read it all again.

You will probably want to read the complete text again after you have finished the whole lesson. Then test yourself on the vocabulary words that you underlined when you first read the text and learn the words you don't know.



Word Forms: Verbs

Every sentence must have a verb. How do you know which form of a verb to use? There are often clues that tell you what form of the verb to use.

Put the right form of the verb in each blank. Explain why you chose each form.

- 1. Did Bering (lead) ______ an expedition across Siberia?
- 2. The expedition (leave) ______ St. Petersburg in 1733.
- 3. Bob is (study) ______ about explorers.
- 4. Nadia has (learn) ______ a lot of words this week.
- 5. Can you (help) _____ me with this exercise?
- 6. The teacher (give) _____ a lot of homework every day.
- 7. Mr. Gordon was (sleep) ______ at midnight last night.
- 8. They are going to (travel) ______ in Europe next summer.





Prepositions

The best way to learn how to use the right preposition is by practicing. Write the prepositions in these sentences from the text.

1.	1733, the most complete scientific expedition in				
	history that time left St. Petersburg.				
2.	The scientists planned to report everything.				
3.	The expedition had to cross Siberia order				
	reach the Pacific Ocean.				
4.	Vitus Bering, the leader the whole expedition, left				
	St. Petersburg almost 600 people.				
5.	They traveled mostly flat-bottomed boats				
	the rivers.				
6.	They had only one summer instead two years				
	their explorations because the				
	many problems and delays.				
7.	At last, the sailors Bering's ship saw mountains a				
	short distance the sea.				
8.	They were a place no trees, but				
	there were birds and animals food.				
9.	this time, the Russian government had lost interest				
	the North Pacific.				
10.	It discovered a new part North America.				
35.02.00m					



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are one of the men who left the island in the spring of 1742. Tell what happened to you during the decade from 1733 to 1743. Give a few details.
- 2. The reading does not say what happened to the people on Chirikov's ship after the two ships lost contact. What do you think happened to them?



Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole

lesson

4



Before You Read

- 1. What does this photograph tell you about the geography of the South Pole?
- 2. What would you need in order to explore the South Pole?
- 3. What problems might explorers in the South Pole have?

Context Clues

www.irLanguage.com

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Robert Scott led an expedition to Antarctica for a scientific **organization** called the Royal Geographical Society.
- 2. On earlier expeditions, when the dogs became **weak**, the men killed them for food.
- 3. Scott had the bad luck of having **extremely** bad weather. It was often −40°C (minus 40 degrees Celsius).
- 4. Scott and his men spent the winter near the ocean. They used sleds to carry supplies farther **inland**.
- 5. The men became **exhausted** and had difficulty pulling their sleds.

4 Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole



The first person to reach the South Pole was Roald Amundsen, a Norwegian. Robert Scott, who was English, arrived at the South Pole a month after Amundsen and died on the return journey to his ship. Yet, strangely enough, Scott became a hero, but Amundsen did not.

Captain Robert Scott (1868–1912) was an officer in the English navy. From 1901 to 1904, he led an expedition to Antarctica for a British scientific **organization** called the Royal Geographical Society.

10 His group traveled farther south than anyone else had ever done. He gathered information on rocks, weather, and climate, and he made maps. When he returned to England, he was a national hero.



A few years later, Scott decided to organize another expedition. He said that he wanted to make a complete scientific study of Antarctica, but his real goal was to be the first person at the South Pole. He took three doctors, several scientists, and a number of other men with him.

Scott's group sailed on a ship named the *Terra Nova* in June 1910. When they reached Australia, they learned that Amundsen was also on his way to the Pole.

Amundsen and Scott were very different from each other, and they made very different plans. Amundsen planned everything very carefully. He took sleds and dog teams, as the great Arctic explorers did. Scott took ponies (small horses) and a few dogs, but he planned to have his men pull the sleds themselves for most of the trip. On earlier expeditions, as some dogs became weak, the men killed them for food for themselves and the other dogs. Amundsen did this too, and it helped him reach the Pole, but later people called him "dog eater." Scott would not eat his dogs, and this was one reason he died on this expedition.

There were other differences between the two

special expeditions. Amundsen sailed 100 kilometers closer to the Pole than Scott did. Scott also had the bad luck of having extremely bad weather—days of blizzards and strong winds. It was often -40°C (minus 40 degrees Celsius).

Scott and his men built a base camp near the ocean's

edge and spent the winter there. They used sleds and
ponies to carry a ton of supplies farther inland to a
place that they named the One Ton Depot. When spring
came, a few of the men started ahead of the others with
motorized sleds to leave supplies along the way.

However, after only a few days, the motorized sleds **broke down**, and the men had to pull them.

A few days later, Scott started for the South Pole with a few men. The whole journey was very difficult. Scott and his men either walked through deep snow or skied over ice and <u>uneven</u> ground. The climate was too difficult for the ponies, and they all died. There were frequent snowstorms. Sometimes the men couldn't leave their tents for several days because of blizzards.

not strong

storms with wind and snow

toward the interior

not flat



When Scott was 260 kilometers from the Pole, he sent all but four men back to the base camp. This was probably his most serious mistake. His tent was big enough for only four people, and he had only enough food and fuel for four. Somehow he had to provide for four people plus himself. Also, one man had left his skis 60 behind with some of the supplies. He had to walk in the snow, and this slowed down the whole group.

take care of

On January 17, 1912, Scott and his men reached the Pole, only to find a tent and the Norwegian flag. They were not the first people to reach the South Pole. They 65 had lost the race.

The next day, they started the 1,300-kilometer journey back to their base camp, pulling their heavy sleds full of supplies. The trip back was worse than the trip to the Pole. They became weak from hunger. At times, the 70 whiteness everywhere made them <u>blind</u>. Their fingers and toes began to freeze, and two of the men fell and injured themselves. They didn't have enough fuel to keep warm in their tent. They became exhausted and had more and more difficulty pulling their sleds.

sometimes not able to see

75 Finally, one man died. Then another became so weak that he knew he was endangering the lives of the others. One night, he left the tent and never returned. He walked out into the blizzard to die instead of holding back the other three.

causing danger to

Every day, Scott described the terrible journey in his diary. On March 21, the three remaining men were only twenty kilometers from the One Ton Depot, but another blizzard kept them in their tent. On March 29, they were still unable to leave their tent. On that day, Scott wrote 85 his last words in his diary.

A search party found the three **bodies** eight months later. They also found Scott's diary, excellent photographs of the expedition, and letters to take back to England. The search party left the frozen bodies 90 where they found them.

Today, the base camp building is still there. Inside are supplies, furniture, and the men's belongings. They have been left just the way they were when Scott's



80

expedition was there. New Zealand takes care of the building and its contents.

Robert Scott's name <u>lives on</u> in stories of his trip to Antarctica, the last part of the Earth that people explored. He was not the first to reach the South Pole, but he is remembered as one of the great heroes of exploration.

continues to live

	Vocabulary			
7, 5, 5, 5, 6	organization edge blind	,	weak broke down fuel	
1.	Α	•		re rol =
2.	He put the glass to	oo close to the	0	f the table, and it
	fell off.			
3.	A baby has more b	ones in her	than	n an adult has.
	That's because ma	ny of our bones gr	ow together as we	age.
4.	People who grow	up near the sea are	often unhappy if t	they have to move
5.	A	person canno	ot see.	
6.	It's very cold in no	orthern Canada, bu	it at the North Pole	it's
		cold.		
7.	His car	, and he	had to walk five m	iles to get home.
8.	-	, Burke rode hor	seback. At other til	mes, he walked.
9.	People need	to	cook and to heat th	eir homes.
10	The United Nation	s is an important i	nternational	

b Vocabulary

	weak	provided	inland	exhausted
	broke down	lives on	uneven	mistake
	belongings	edge	endangered	bodies
1.	It was a	to c	lrive into the city. T	here were so many
	cars on the road th	nat we were an	hour late for the me	eeting.
2.	When I am traveli	ng, I keep my .		in a suitcase.
3.	If you don't eat fo	r several days,	you will probably f	eel quite
4.	When I was a chile	d, my parents _		me with everything
	I needed.			
5.	The floor is so		that we can't pu	t a table on it.
6.	Ali stayed up all n	ight to study fo	or a test, and in the	morning he
	was			
7.	She	her owr	life when she jum	ped off the boat.
8.	A famous person's	s name often _		in books and articles.
9.	Is the city of Bosto	n on the coast o	or	?
10.	The	of a kni	fe is very sharp.	
107.866				
	Vocabulary Re	view: Antony	ms	
Mai	tch each word in the	left column with	its opposite in the rig	ht column.
	1. remote			
	2. leave			
	3. get along	c. close	o a city	
	4. join	d. fight		
	5. run away	e. togeth	er	
	6. include	f. having	3	
	7. uneven	g. leave	out	
	8. separate	h. remai	า	
	9. interior	i. come	back	
_	10. lacking	j. smoot	h	





Multiple Choice

1. The first person to reach the South Pole was ____ a. English b. French c. Norwegian 2. Scott was mainly interested in ___ a. being the first person at the South Pole b. collecting information about the rocks in Antarctica c. learning about the weather and climate in Antarctica *3. Amundsen's expedition ate dogs because ____ a. this is a custom in Norway b. it was a way for the men to have fresh meat c. there was no other food *4. Scott's expedition had to travel __ a. a shorter distance than Amundsen's b. the same distance as Amundsen's c. farther than Amundsen's *5. January is a _____ month in Antarctica. a. summer b. fall c. winter 6. Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was ____ a. more difficult b. about the same c. much easier *7. Scott and his men became exhausted because __ a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm b. the sun on the snow blinded them c. they didn't have enough food and had to pull heavy sleds 8. We know the details about Scott's expedition because _ a. he sent reports back to the English government b. he kept a diary and the search party found it c. he wrote detailed letters back to England

e

Comprehension Questions

- *1. Scott and Burke led expeditions in very different climates. What was similar about their expeditions?
- 2. Explain one serious mistake that Scott made.
- *3. Why did Scott travel from his base camp to the Pole in January?
- 4. Why did one man walk out of the tent into the blizzard and not return?
- 5. Why was it difficult for the men to pull the sleds on the trip back from the Pole?
- 6. Why couldn't the three men travel the last twenty kilometers to the One Ton Depot?
- *7. Was Scott a hero of exploration? Give a reason for your answer.



Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 7 (lines 39–46)?

- a. moving supplies inland
- b. getting ready to ski to the South Pole
- c. bad luck with motorized sleds



Word Forms: Nouns

There are three parts of a sentence that always have a noun (or a pronoun): the subject, the object of the verb, and the object of a preposition.

Subject	Verb	Object of the verb	Object of a preposition
David-Neel	rode	a horse	to Tibet.
The expedition	took	food	for the animals.
A storm	drove	the ship	onto an island.

The subject is usually at the beginning of a sentence. The object of the verb is usually right after the verb. It answers the question "What?" The object of a preposition comes after the preposition. There might be adjectives and other words that describe these nouns:

David-Neel rode a large black horse to Tibet.

The large scientific **expedition** took a lot of **food** for the **animals**.

A bad **storm** drove the large sailing **ship** onto a small **island**.



Choose a word form from line 1 of the chart to use in sentence 1, and so on. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	include	inclusion	inclusive	inclusively
2.	separate	separation	separate	separately
3.	exhaust	exhaustion	exhausting	
4.	realize	realization		
5.	remind	reminder		
6.	inform	information	(un)informative	(un)informatively
7.	organize	organization	organizational	organizationally
8.	weaken	weakness	weak	weakly

1.	Did you a description of your new friend when you
	wrote to your family?
2.	Write your two compositions on pieces of paper.
3.	He spent a long time in the desert. He suffered from heat
4.	After Ms. Cook got home, she that she had forgotten
	to mail her letters.
5.	Ms. Barber put a on the refrigerator for her children
	to do their homework.
6.	Kumiko asked the teacher forabout the city buses.
	The teacher gave her a schedule that was very
7.	An in Melbourne chose Burke to lead an expedition
	across Australia.
8.	He felt before he started taking the medicine, and
	now the medicine has him even more.

h Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form. Do all of the two-word verb exercises in the book this way.

	run out of	=	use up; not have any more	
	work out	=	exercise	
	slow down	=	go more slowly	
	speed up	=	go faster	
	live on	=	have enough money to pay for necessities with	
1.	Cars have to	_	when they enter a city. When the	ey leave
	the city, they	can	again.	
2.	A lot of peop	ole li	ke to go to a gymnasium and	This
	exercise is go	ood .	for them.	
3.	The Lopez fa	amil	y adopted two children. Now they can't	
			the money Mr. Lopez gets for working.	
4.	Scott's men v	vere	hungry because they had almost	food



Finding the Reason

Here are some sentences about the explorers you have read about. Give a reason for each statement. The first one is done for you.

Statement	Reason
Scott and his men were cold all the time.	They didn't have enough fuel.
Scott went to the South Pole.	
David-Neel studied Tibetan in India.	
Bering's expedition lost a lot of its food.	
Bering took scientists with him.	1
Burke died on his expedition.	
Burke took camels on his expedition.	
The world knows about Burke's and Scott's expeditions.	



Some words are often used together. For example, we often use the word "join" with the word "organization."

www.irLanguage.com

Read the following groups of words and then use the words printed in **bold** in the sentences below.

	join a team join an organization join a club	join an expedition join hands join forces	
1.	Walter joined the soccer good player.	because he is a very	
2.	To do this dance, everyone st	ands in a circle and joins	
3.	If you and I joinmore quickly.	, we'll be able to do the work	
4.	I'd like to join an	that works for peace.	
5.	You don't have to be a great s	singer to join the music	
	Guided Writing		

Write one of these two short compositions.

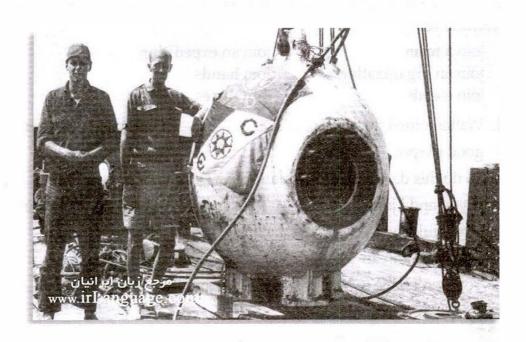
- 1. You are going to lead a journey to the South Pole. What will you do differently from the way Scott did it?
- 2. You are in the tent with Scott in March 1912. Write a message in your diary.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com



lesson 5

Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration



Before You Read

- 1. Would you like to explore the ocean floor? Why or why not?
- 2. Would you be willing to explore the ocean in the metal ball shown in the picture above? Why or why not?
- 3. What are some of the dangers of ocean exploration?





Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Salt water covers roughly 71% of the Earth.
- 2. For centuries, people thought of the ocean as a travel **network**. It was a way to get from one place to another.
- 3. Sailors thought the ocean was a frightening place, full of dangerous **creatures**.
- 4. Early diving suits allowed people to **descend** 50 feet underwater.
- 5. Scientists discovered underwater mountains and more than 4,000 new species.

5 Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration



Salt water covers **roughly** 71% of the Earth's **surface**, and yet we have spent much more time exploring the Earth's mountains, forests, and deserts than studying its oceans. Scientists say that we know more about the

5 moon than we know about our own oceans. And today, we continue to spend more money on space exploration than on ocean exploration.

Why is it that we know so little about the oceans that surround us? Perhaps it is because, for centuries, people thought of the ocean as just a travel **network**. It was a way to get from one place to another. Most ocean travelers stayed close to the coast. Their goal was not to explore the ocean but <u>rather</u> to find new trade routes for the exchange of spices and other goods.

instead; more exactly

To early sailors, the ocean was also a frightening place, full of dangerous **creatures**. They thought that,



deep below, the ocean was a dark and lifeless place. Believing this, people had little **incentive** to explore the ocean depths.

Ocean exploration was also **hampered** by the conditions below the surface. The tremendous **pressure** of the water would **crush** an unprotected diver. Water temperature on the ocean floor was not inviting either. Vents, or openings, on the ocean floor have

temperatures as high as 254°F (254 degrees Fahrenheit) or 123°C (123 degrees Celsius).

To explore below the surface of the ocean, humans needed special equipment. Early diving suits from the late eighteenth century and early nineteenth century were not very useful. One type enclosed the diver's body in a cylinder, making it difficult to move around. A later type of diving suit replaced the large cylinder with a heavy metal helmet. Air from above the surface traveled through a tube into the helmet. These early diving suits allowed people to descend fifty feet below the ocean surface for about an hour.

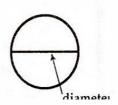
In 1872, the first ship equipped for ocean exploration set out on a four-year trip around the world. The ship had two laboratories, and it carried the most advanced scientific equipment of the time. Scientists on the ship tested the temperature and **density** of sea water. They gathered information about ocean currents and meteorology. They discovered an underwater mountain chain and more than 4,000 new **species**. The results of this expedition encouraged interest in exploring farther below the ocean surface. To do this, however, divers needed better equipment to protect them from the pressure of water.

Two divers, Charles Beebe and Otis Barton, designed one of the early submersibles for deep-sea diving. It was a large, hollow, steel ball less than five feet in diameter and weighing 5,000 pounds. A long heavy chain connected the steel ball to a ship above. In 1934, Beebe and Barton descended half a mile below the surface of the ocean in their submersible. From inside the steel ball, they were able to see extraordinary creatures. This was a great





empty; with nothing inside



breakthrough for ocean exploration, for now people could see the underwater world with their own eyes.

Since Beebe and Barton's record-breaking descent,
improvements have been made in diving equipment,
allowing people to travel deeper for longer amounts of
time. Just twenty-six years after Beebe and Barton's
half-mile descent, Jacques Piccard and two others
traveled to a depth of 35,797 feet, or nearly seven miles,
in their own much improved submersible called the
Trieste. Even at this great depth, the explorers
discovered deep-sea life and new species.

The work of deep-sea explorers has given us a picture of life far below the surface. There is now greater understanding of the <u>diversity</u> of life in the ocean. We are now more aware of our dependence on healthy oceans. Still, less than one tenth of 1% of the deep ocean has been explored. Sylvia Earle, one of the leading **experts** on oceans, says, "We're in a new century and a new millennium, and most of the planet has yet to be seen."

variety





Vocabulary

	descend hamper surface	crush expert density		enclosed helmets diversity
1.	You can drink thi	rough a straw beca	use it's	inside.
			to write	
3.	Do you think it's	easier to go up a n	nountain or to	
	a mountain?	0 1		
4.	It takes many year	rs to become an _		on something.
			than a g	
			oot, you might	
	•		is higher in cities	
			s to wear	
		•	s movement throug	
			t goal for many sch	
		•	who are different fr	
	Vocabulary			
	pressure	rough	rather	incentive
	species		,	network
	descent	1	creature	surface
1.	There are many k	inds of animal		
		oth		
3.	I don't need to kn		of your arrival. Just	give me a
4			in a large fer	nced area
			end	
٥.	the mountains.	e beach this weeke		tian
6		mes lise money as	an	to get neonle
0.	to work harder.	ince use money as	uit	to get people
7		ichec against vour	body with a	of
/.	-	•	r square centimeter	
	71 pourtus per si	quate men (1 kg pe	i square certificeer	·)·
/				



8.	Los Angeles h	nas a huge	of high	nways.
9. Ahas a flat circular top and bottom and stra			om and straight sides.	
10.	There was sor	ne kind of	living	in the old building.
		ut we never saw i		
999900	200			
	Vocabular	y Review		
	beggar	surrounded	temperature	civil war
	delayed	in order to	broke down	ashore
	decade	organization	details	remind
1.	The soldiers _		the building so that	t no one could escape.
2.	What does the	e smell of an orang	ge	_ you of?
3.	The snowstor	m	us for three ho	urs because we had to
	drive very slo	wly.		
4.	Α		ple for money or foo	
			of Petroleum Expo	
6.	I only know sl	ne was in an accid	ent. I don't know an	y of the
7.	There has been	n a	in Somalia for	several years.
			fighting among them	
8.			in Anta	
			rades, you have to do	
		is ten year		
		, , , , , ,		
d	Truo/Falco/	Not Enough Info	ormation	
4	iluejiaisej	TNOT LITOURIT HIT	Officialion	
	1. More th	nan 50% of the Ear	th is under water.	
	2. Early sa	ailors were afraid	to explore below the	surface of the ocean.
	3. In most	parts of the ocean	n floor, the water tem	perature is very hot.
	4. The firs	t diving suits wer	e uncomfortable.	
	5. The dee	epest parts of the o	ocean are lifeless.	
	6. Early d	ivers carried their	own air with them.	
		ly submersibles ha		
		•	ebe and Barton's deep	o-sea diving record.
	1			_



e

Comprehension Questions

- *1. Why do you think we know more about the moon than about the Earth's oceans?
- 2. What hampered ocean exploration for centuries?
- 3. What is an ocean vent?
- *4. What was important about the 1872 scientific trip around the world?
- 5. How did Charles Beebe and Otis Barton contribute to ocean exploration?
- 6. How far was Jacques Piccard able to descend in the ocean?
- 7. What have we learned from ocean exploration?
- *8. How are the oceans important to humans?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 15–19)?

- a. Early sailors didn't have a good reason to explore the oceans.
- b. Early sailors were afraid of the oceans.
- c. No one knew what was in the ocean.



Scanning

When you want to find just one detail in a text, it is not necessary to read carefully. You **scan** instead; that is, you look as quickly as possible until you find the information.

Find these answers by scanning. Write short answers (not complete sentences). Write the number of the line where you found each answer.

1.	What is the temperature at vents in the ocean floor?	2
2.	What did scientists discover in 1872?	
3.	How much did Beebe's submersible weigh?	
4.	What was the Trieste?	7
5.	How deep did Jacques Piccard dive?	

6. Who is Sylvia Earle?





Word Forms: Nouns

These are some common noun suffixes:

-er, -ar, -or: reminder, beggar, advisor

-ist: scientist

-ment: equipment

-ion, -sion, -tion, -ation: religion, decision, separation, realization

-y: discovery-ity: diversity-ness: loneliness-ance: acceptance

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	trade	trade trader		
2.	enclose	enclosure	enclosed	
3.	descend	descent		
4.		density	dense	densely
5.	diversify	diversity	diverse	
6.	rough	roughness	rough	roughly
7.	surround	surroundings	surrounded	

1.	Japan and America	with each other.
2.	A lake is an	body of water.
3.	Beebe and Barton made a	of half a mile.
4.	Steel is a very	material.
5.	There is great	_ in the population of fish in the ocean.
6.	Her father spoke	to her because he was angry.
7	It is not unusual for fish to	divers

Prepositions

Write the correct preposition in each blank.

1.	Salt water covers roughly 71% the Earth's surface.				
2.	The ocean was a way to get one place to another.				
3.	. The temperature the ocean floor varies from one place to another				
4.	. Diving suits the late eighteenth century were difficult to move				
	around in.				
5.	Air above the surface traveled through a tube the helmet				
6.	Scientists tested the density sea water.				
7.	A heavy chain connected the ball a ship above.				

8. Even _____ this great depth, the explorers discovered new life forms.



Articles: The

Some geographical locations include the in the name.

1. Certain countries (Note that most countries do *not* include **the** in the name):

the United States of America, or the United States, or the U.S.A., or the U.S.

the United Arab Emirates

the United Kingdom

the Dominican Republic

the Netherlands

2. Major points on the Earth:

the North Pole

the South Pole

the equator

3. Plurals of islands, lakes, and mountains:

the Canary Islands

the Great Lakes

the Himalaya Mountains



4. Oceans, seas, rivers, canals, deserts:	
the Pacific Ocean the Bering Sea the Mississippi River the Suez Canal the Sahara Desert	
Continents, most geographical areas, most countries, and single islands, lake and mountains do <i>not</i> have the in the name:	28,
Asia Western Europe (but the Middle East) England Bering Island Lake Geneva Mount Everest	
Write the in the blank if it is necessary.	
1 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.	
2. This canal used to belong to United States.	
3 Kuwait is near United Arab Emirates and Saudi Arabia.	
4 Germany, Belgium, and Netherlands are in Europe.	
5 Lake Geneva is in Switzerland.	
6. Where are Madeira Islands?	
7 Jordan is in Middle East.	
8 Amazon River is in South America.	



K Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Do you think we should spend more money on space exploration or on ocean exploration? Give reasons to support your answer.
- 2. You are in Charles Beebe's submersible in 1932. Describe what you see and feel while you are descending.



Video Highlights



Before You Watch

1. Read the information in the box.

Throughout history, explorers have gone to remote places like the North Pole to discover new things. However, you don't need to go on a long and exciting trip to explore. The word *explore* can also mean to look at something near you very closely.

- 2. Try it out. Explore the room around you. What do you see, hear, and smell? Copy the chart to the right and fill in the missing information at the top of the list. Then complete the list with at least three observations.
- 3. Compare your list with a partner's. Did you observe some of the same things?
 Which things were different?





As You Watch

Read the phrases and sentences below. They come from the video. What do you think the video is about?

- 1. "In the next thirty years, everything we want to find can be found."
- 2. "Including a 2,000-year-old Greece shipping vessel found off the coast of Cyprus."
- 3. "For fifty years, the Nauticos Corporation has scoured the ocean floor looking for sunken objects."
- 4. "Shipwrecks, marinas, even downed planes."



- 5. "Divers are really only good to about ten hundred feet."
- 6. "Worldwide, less than two companies do this kind of exploration."

Each sentence has a mistake. Watch the video and correct the sentences.



After You Watch

1. These words come from the video.	Match them to the correct
definition.	

find drop drag shift identify control
a. to pull with difficulty
b. to change from one position to another
c. to come across
d. to recognize something or someone
e. to cause to fall
f. to guide something
The Nauticos Corporation uses a system to find things in

- 2. The Nauticos Corporation uses a system to find things in the ocean. Write a word from Exercise 1 to complete the sentences.
 - a. <u>Drop</u> sonar equipment in the ocean.
 - b. ______ equipment along the sea floor.
 - c. _____ target.
 - d. _____ to the control room.
 - e. _____ remote vehicle using joystick.
 - f. _____ object.
- 3. Describe the system Nauticos uses to find things in the ocean. Use *first*, *next*, *then*, *finally*.

Example: First, they drop sonar equipment in the ocean.

- 4. Discuss these questions with the class.
 - a. Would you like to be a deep-sea explorer? Why or why not?
 - b. If you were a deep-sea explorer, what would you like to find on the ocean floor?
 - c. Do you know of any famous shipwrecks on the ocean floor?
 - d. Have you or has someone you know ever found anything valuable on the beach?



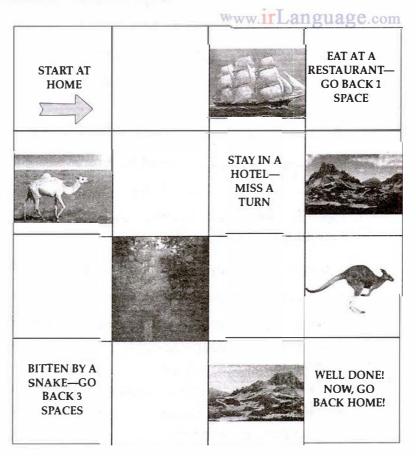
Activity Page



Adventure Trail

You and your partner are two explorers who are going to travel all over the world. Like all great explorers, you will describe the different places you travel to. You will need a coin and two counters.

Put your counters on the Home square. Each person takes a turn tossing the coin. If the coin you toss lands heads up, move your counter forward one square. If it lands tails up, move your counter forward two squares. If your counter lands on a picture, describe the new place using the vocabulary words you know. Also, write two sentences about the place. Continue to toss the coin and move your counter until you reach the end (the Well Done! square). When you have reached the end, share your sentences with the class.





Dictionary Page

Understanding Definitions

1. Draw lines to match the following two-word verbs with their meanings.

a. get along	return
b. run out	be careful
c. work out	do a series of exercises
d. give up	have a friendly relationship
e. get back	not work at all
f. break down	not have any left
g. look out	not try any more; surrender

- 2. You can learn new two-word verbs from your dictionary. For example, these verbs all begin with *get*. Read their definitions.
 - **21** *phrasal v.* [T] to get ahead: to succeed, improve oneself: *She got a good job and is getting ahead in life.*
 - **26** phrasal v. insep. [I] to get away (from s.o. or s.t.): a. to escape: The criminal got away from the police. b. to go on vacation: I got away for a week in the Caribbean.
 - **30** phrasal v. insep. to get behind: a. [T] s.o. or s.t.: to support, help succeed: Many people got behind the politician and helped her win the election. b. [I] in s.t.: to be late with one's work, payments, etc.: He got behind in his rent payments and had to leave the apartment.
 - **41** *phrasal v. insep.* to get on with s.t. or s.o.: a. [T] s.t.: to start doing or continue with s.t., often after interruption: *Stop watching television and get on with your homework!* b. [I;T] s.o.: to have a friendly relationship with: *How do you get on with your boss?*

N	ow write in the missing part of each verb.
a.	Donna is a friendly person. She gets
	with everyone.
b.	Try not to get in your homework.
c.	The explorers caught a rabbit for dinner, but it got
	*
d.	Pierre is trying really hard to get He's
	got a good job, he's just bought a house, and he is starting
	college next month.
e.	Both of us were tired and needed a break. We finally got
	for a week at the beach.
f.	She should stop wasting time and get
	with her work.
g.	I had an idea to increase sales. My boss got
	the idea and sales increased 20%.

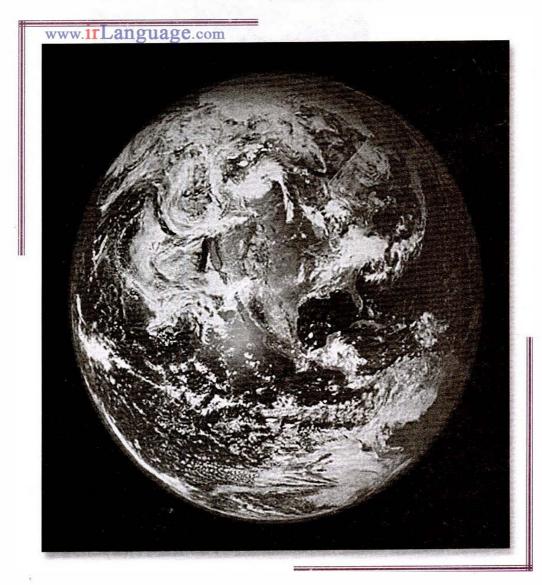


World Issues

unit 2

Our responsibility is to protect the Earth for a million years.

—Robert Hunter, environmentalist



lesson

World Population Growth





Before You Read

- 1. How many people live in your country? In your city?
- 2. Think about your city with twice as many people as it has now. How would things be different?
- 3. Do you want to have any children? How many?



Context Clues

www.irLanguage.com

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. In the eighteenth century, the population of the world increased **gradually**. However, in the nineteenth century, the world's population grew very rapidly.
- 2. By the year 2050, researchers **predict** that the population of the world will be 9.1 billion.
- 3. Fresh water is **crucial** for health and food production.
- 4. What **effect** will 3 billion more people have on the air we breathe?
- 5. We don't know how long the world's supply of petroleum will last.

1 World Population Growth



For thousands of years, the population of the world increased **gradually**. Then, in the mid-nineteenth century, the world's population started to increase rapidly. In the 100 years between 1830 and 1930, the population of the world grew from 1 billion to 2 billion people. By 1960, just thirty years later, the world's population had hit 3 billion. Fifteen years later, the population reached 4 billion. Then, just eleven years later, there were 5 b illion people on Earth. In 1999, we passed the 6 billion mark.

Today, the world's population grows by 76 million people every year. That is about 240,000 people every day. By the year 2050, researchers **predict** that the population of the world will be 9.1 billion.

Does the Earth have the **natural resources** to 15 support this many people? Unfortunately, the answer to this question **depends on** information we don't have. For example, we don't know how people will choose to live in the future. We don't know what their standard of living will be. We also don't know what new 20 **technologies** will be **available** in the future.

raw materials found in nature, such as trees, oil, and natural gas

the overall quality of life that people experience

We do know that the Earth's natural resources are limited. Fresh water, for example, is crucial for health and food production. However, more than 97% of the water on Earth is salt water, which is poisonous to both people

25 and crops. Only 3% of the water on Earth is fresh water, and three quarters of that fresh water is frozen at the North and South Poles. Today, the **demand** for fresh water is greater than the supply in roughly eighty countries around the world. By 2025, scientists predict

30 that forty-eight countries will have <u>chronic</u> shortages of water. At present, desalinization, or the removal of salt from salt water, is not a solution to the shortage of fresh water. It takes a lot of energy to remove the salt from ocean water, and that makes the desalinization process

35 very expensive.

The amount of land we can use to produce food is also limited. Today, roughly 11% of the land on Earth can be used for crops, while another 20% is available for raising animals. Each year, however, more of this land is

- 40 lost as cities grow and roads stretch across the land. In addition, overcultivation has already damaged an amount of farmland equal to the size of the United States and Canada **combined**. It is possible to increase the amount of farmland, but only a little. Some
- 45 farmland can be more productive if people start using different farming methods, but this will not increase worldwide production very much.

Clean air is another important natural resource. However, it too is threatened by the growing 50 population. The average person today puts about 1.1 metric tons of carbon into the atmosphere each year. Most of it comes from burning fossil fuels—gasoline,

long-lasting



coal, oil, wood, and natural gas. Scientists say that the amount of carbon dioxide in the air is already 18% higher than it was in 1960. What **effect** would 3 billion more people have on the air we breathe?

While we have many different sources of commercial energy, there is a limited supply of many of them. Today, most of the world's commercial energy comes from three nonrenewable energy resources—petroleum, natural gas, and coal. Three quarters of this commercial energy is used by developed countries. As the standard of living goes up in other countries, so will the demand for energy. Some scientists predict that if everyone in the world lived like an American, our fossil fuel supply would last for just fifteen more years.

Clearly, the number of people that the Earth can support in the future will depend on many things. The Earth may be able to support 9 billion people, but what will their standard of living be? And what effect will all these people have on the environment?

sold in the marketplace

economically strong

Vocabulary

	gradually technology crucial	-	limited	-	d of living
1.	There is a		_ amount of oi	l in the Earth.	
2.	When automob	oiles first becan	ne	, very	
	few people cou	ld buy them.			
3.	If you have a _		problem,	it never goes awa	y.
4.	Some countries	are poor becau	use they have v	ery few	
5.	We don't yet ha	ave the	t	o supply the worl	d with
	energy without	using oil.			
6.	People are		_ learning that	t we must take car	e of
	the environmer	nt.			
7.	When there is a	n increase in tl	ne	for oil, th	e price
	usually goes up).			
8.	The health of th	ne Earth		how we use its	
	natural resource	es.			
9.	Researchers		that the use	e of coal will incre	ase more
	than 50% over t	the next two de	ecades.		
10.	It's	for e	veryone to have	e a supply of clear	ı water.
b	Vocabulary	-			
	threat	already	effect	source	
	commercial	•	last	nonrenewable	
	combine	limit	prediction	standard	
1.	The population	is growing fas	ter than the foo	d supply in many	
		countries	5.		
2.	In our town, all	of the business	ses are in the _		_ district.
3.	Wind is a renew	able resource,	while oil is a $_$		_ resource.
4.	It's only 8 p.m.,	but I'm		tired.	
5.	If you use the he	ot water slowly	, it will	long	ger.
6.	Overpopulation	could be a		to the health o	f the Earth.



7.	. Using more solar and wind energy would have a positive				
	on the environment.				
8.	. If you salt and water, you get salty water.				
9.	The	of li	iving is higher in s	ome countries than	
	in others.				
10.	The Internet is a	good	of in	nformation about	
	population grov	vth.			
	Vocabulary	Review			
	skill	rather	mistake	blind	
	experts			include	
	exhausted			ashore	
1.	Mr. Rossi was _		after driving	for ten hours.	
2.	For my research	paper, I read	many books writte	en by	
		on air po	ellution.		
3.	Typing is a very	useful	for	students. They can lear	n
	by practicing.				
4.	I do not use the	sun to heat m	y house but	oil.	
				6	
6.	There was a terr	ible	in Spa	in in the 1930s. Almost	
	a million people	died.			
7.	The demand for	food and wat	er is already great	er than the	
	_				
8.	Overpopulation is a threat to many animal				
9.	The children		their teacher,	who was giving	
	away candy.				
10.	Many people thi	nk it's a	to	depend on oil for	
	our energy.				





Multiple Choice

For the rest of the book, there will be no asterisks (*) before any multiple-choice items. You will have to decide if the answer is in one of the sentences or if you have to figure it out yourself. In this exercise, use the text and the charts to answer the questions.

World's Largest Urban Areas				
in Population (2004)	21 224 700			
1. Tokyo/Yokohama, Japan	31,224,700			
2. New York City, U.S.A.	30,107,600			
3. Mexico City, Mexico	21,503,700			
4. Seoul, South Korea	20,156,000			
5. Sao Paolo, Brazil	19,090,200			
6. Jakarta, Indonesia	18,206,700			
7. Osaka/Kobe/Kyoto, Japan	17,608,500			
8. Bombay, India	17,340,900			
9. Los Angeles, U.S.A.	16,710,400			
10. Cairo, Egypt	15,863,300			

world's Larges	World's Largest Countries				
in Population (in Population (2004)				
1. China	1,298,847,624				
2. India	1,065,070,607				
3. U.S.A.	293,027,571				
4. Indonesia	238,452,952				
5. Brazil	184,101,109				
6. Pakistan	159,196,336				
7. Russia	143,782,338				
8. Bangladesh	141,340,476				
9. Nigeria	137,253,133				
10. Japan	127,333,002				

Mould's Laurant Countries

- 1. There were _____ as many people in the world in 1930 as there were in 1830.
 - a. twice
 - b. three times
 - c. four times
- 2. Between 1960 and 2000, the population of the world _____.
 - a. doubled
 - b. grew three times larger
 - c. increased by more than a billion people
- 3. About _____ of the Earth's land can be used for raising food.
 - a. 11%
 - b. 20%
 - c. 30%
- 4. The wind and the sun are _____
 - a. nonrenewable energy resources
 - b. renewable energy resources
 - c. limited energy resources



5.	The amount of in the air has increased since 1960. a. fossil fuels b. carbon dioxide
	c. natural resources
6.	The developed countries use commercial energy than the
	developing countries. a. a little more b. two times more c. a lot more
7.	Some scientists predict that, by the year 2025,a. the population will reach 9 billion b. some countries will have serious problems getting fresh water
	c. 11% of our farmland will be gone
8.	has the urban area with the largest population.a. Brazilb. Nigeriac. Japan
9.	In, the population of the whole world was about the same as the
	population of China today. a. 1750 b. 1850 c. 1950
10.	has almost the same population as Cairo and Los Angeles
	together. a. Mexico City b. Tokyo c. Seoul
200638	W 1



Comprehension Questions

For the rest of the book, there will be no asterisks (*) before any questions. You will have to decide if the answer is in one of the sentences or if you have to figure it out yourself. Use the text and charts to answer these questions.

- 1. How has the population of the world changed in the past 2000 years?
- 2. Why is the standard of living different in different countries?
- 3. Can the amount of farmland on Earth be increased?
- 4. Why can't we use most of the Earth's water?



- 5. What is a nonrenewable energy resource?
- 6. Why is the demand for energy increasing everywhere in the world?
- 7. Is it better to have a smaller population with a higher standard of living for everyone or to have a larger population with a lower standard of living?
- 8. How many people can the Earth support?
- 9. Which European country is among the world's largest?
- 10. Which urban area of the world has the largest population?
- 11. Do you think your country has too many people? Give a reason for your answer.



Main Idea

What is the main idea of this reading? Write it in a sentence.



Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

cut down = cut and remove (as in cut down a tree)

figure out = find (the answer)

go up = increase

hang up = end a telephone conversation make up = think of (a new story or idea)

1. Mr. Hasegawa _____ funny stories to tell his children.

2.	The big old tree in our from	nt yard is dead. We have to
	it	
3.	I can't	the answer to this math problem.

4. When Tom finished talking to his friend on the phone, he said "Goodbye" and ______.

5. When there is a shortage of something, the price usually





Irregular Verbs

Memorize these verb forms. Then put the right form of a verb in each of the blanks.

	Simple freeze forbid sink shoot	Past froze forbade sank shot	Past Participle frozen forbidden sunk shot
1.	The law	dri	ving over 40 kilometers an hour on side
	streets in the cit	y. You can drive 6	0 or 75 on main streets.
2.	A small sailboat	hit a rock, and w	ithin an hour it had
3.	-	food is quic	k and easy to cook.
4.	Bob went hunting	ng and	a bear.
00000	200		



Word Forms: Adjectives

Adjectives describe nouns. They are usually before the noun. They are sometimes after the verb be.

These are difficult questions.

These questions are difficult.

Participles are often used as adjectives. The third form of the verb is the past participle—for example, **talked** or **frozen**. The **-ing** form of the verb is the present participle—for example, **talking**.

The world is overpopulated.

The **growing** population is causing environmental problems.



Choose a word from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	predict	prediction	predictable	predictably
2.	shorten	shortage	short	shortly
3.	depend	dependence	dependent	dependently
4.	limit	limit	limited	
5.	populate	population	populous	
6.	care	care	careful careless	carefully carelessly
7.	use	use	useful useless	usefully uselessly
8.	combine	combination	combined	

1.	Anne likes to read books with a ending. She doesn't
	like surprises.
2.	The secretary was of paper and had to order some.
3.	Many countries are on oil for fuel.
4.	The speed in my area is 30 miles per hour.
5.	What is the of your country?
6.	If you are when you write your composition, you will
	probably get a good grade. If you write, you may fail.
7.	A sled is if you live in Kuwait.
3.	They use a of resources for energy in their house—the
	sun, oil, and wind power.



Put an article in each blank if one is necessary.

- 1. For thousands of years, _____ population of ____ world increased gradually.
- 2. By year 2050, researchers predict that _____ population of _____ world will be 9.1 billion.
- 3. We don't know how _____ people will choose to live in the future.
- 4. More than 97% of _____ water on Earth is ____ salt water.
- 5. Today, _____ demand for _____ fresh water is greater than ____ supply.
- 6. It is possible to increase _____ amount of farmland, but only _____ little.
- 7. Overcultivation has already damaged an amount of farmland equal to the size of _____ United States and _____ Canada combined.
- 8. We have many different sources of _____ commercial energy.



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe what your country is doing to help the world population problem. If it isn't doing anything, what do you think it should do? Why?
- 2. Describe life in your city ten years from now if twice as many people live there.



Changes in the Family

lesson

2



Before You Read

- 1. How many people are in your family?
- 2. Where do the people in your family live?
- 3. How is your life different from your grandparents' lives?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. In some families, grandparents, parents, children, uncles, and other relatives all live together.
- 2. In some families, mothers stay at home to take care of the children.
- 3. Since 1970, there has been a 200% increase in the number of single-parent families. The number has increased **tremendously**.
- 4. **Industrialization** made it possible for many young people to move to the city to work in factories.

2 Changes in the Family



Barbara Todisco, 35, and her husband, Ted, 37, have two children. They live together in what is called a **nuclear** family. A nuclear family **consists of** two generations—two parents and their children.

is made up of

- Esme Tanguay, 43, lives with her daughter, Maria, 11. They live together in a single-parent family. In the United States, a quarter of American children now **grow up** in single-parent families.
- Juan Diego, 45, of Miami, Florida, has two children from his first marriage. His second wife, Nancy, has two children from her first marriage. Juan and Nancy also have a child together. Juan and Nancy and the five children live together in what is now called a blended family.
- Carl Jacobs, 32, lives with his wife, their two children, and his wife's mother and father. They are an **extended** family. Extended families consist of more than



one set of parents and children. The most common type of extended family consists of a married couple and one or more of their married children all living together in one household. An extended family might also consist of two brothers and their wives and children. A large extended family might consist of grandparents, parents, children, uncles, and other relatives.

For centuries, the extended family was the most common type of family. One benefit of living in an extended family is that there are more people to share the work. This was especially important in societies where mothers had to work outside the home, raising crops or gathering food. In an extended family, mothers could work outside the home while other family members were available to **take care of** the children and do other household **tasks**.

In the United States, one of the biggest changes in families in the last century has been a decrease in the number of extended families. One very important reason for this decrease was **industrialization**. The growth of industry made it possible for many young people to leave their families and move to the city to

work in factories. By the 1920s, a <u>majority</u> of children in the United States were no longer living in extended families. Instead, they were living in families with a father who went to work and a mother who stayed at home.

As long as a family could <u>afford</u> to have the mother stay at home, this type of family was able to survive. For many families, however, this was not **financially** possible. As the cost of living rose in the United States, more and more women needed to work outside the

50 home. At the same time, an <u>emphasis</u> on equality for men and women opened the door to new job <u>opportunities</u> for women. Before long, single-parent families, blended families, and even extended families were becoming more common.

Since 1970, the number of single-parent families in the United States has increased **tremendously.** Today, there are roughly 90 million single-parent families with more than half but not all

have enough money (for something)

special importance (placed on)

chances for advancement

children under the age of 18. That is a 200% increase since 1970. Nearly 99% of these single-parent families

are headed by women. Many sociologists have studied single-parent families to find out why they are increasing in number. The fact that it is now easier to get a divorce in the United States does not fully explain this increase. In many countries, divorce rates stabilized in the 1980s but the number of single-parent families continued to increase. In order to get a better explanation for the increase in the number of single-parent families, it is also necessary to look at why people aren't remarrying and why there are more births outside of marriage today. These two factors are also contributing to the rise in the number of single-parent families.

Boutros Boutros-Ghali, the former Secretary-General of the United Nations, once said that families "are at the leading edge of change and are adapting to serious challenges, often under very demanding conditions." The truth is that families have always had to change and adapt, but somehow the family has always survived.

Vocabula<u>ry</u>

	married consisted of grew up	took care of stabilized extended	emphasized industrial nuclear	opportunities industry sociologists	
1.	The	family is	s larger than the		
			tonic contract		
2.	Her mother		the children while sh	e was in	
	the hospital.				
3.	When his temper		at 1	.00°F, the doctors	
	were able to oper	ate.			
4.	Lunch	salad,	soup, and sandwich	ies.	
			couple		
6.	Japan is an	n	ation. It has heavy a	nd	
	light	-			
7.	He	in Canad	a, but he spent his ac	lult life in France.	
			the importance of s		
	learning, and now all of the children are professors.				
9.	He had so many j	ob	after graduat	e school that he had	
	trouble deciding	what to do.			
11/2	Si .				
ľ	Vocabulary				
	divorced	afford	household	stable	
	majority		task	opportunity	
	financial	•	tremendous	• •	
1.	Maria is from M	exico, but she has	s several	in	
	California. Three	of her aunts live	e there with their fam	ilies.	
2.	Her brother was	married for ten	years before he got _		
			iology class. The		
	students are from the United States, but there are also five				
	international stu	dents.			
4.	Α	studies ho	ow a society is organi	ized.	
5.	A bank is a type	of	organization.		

6. The car I saw costs \$10	0,000, but I can to pay only
\$7,000. I guess I'll hav	e to find a cheaper car.
7. I need a	of dollars, not just one.
8. My father grew up in	a of twelve people.
9. My least favorite hous	ehold is washing dishes.
10. In my opinion, a house	e with eight bedrooms is a
h	
C Vocabulary Review	w: Definitions
Match each word with its dep	finition.
1. blizzard	a. instead
2. inland	b. living things
3. rather	c. worse
4. belongings	d. stop running or working
5. remain	e. things you own
6. creatures	f. bad snow and wind storm
7. expert	g. make a guess
8. break down	h. stay in one place
9. depend on	i. someone who knows a lot about a subject
10. predict	j. away from the ocean
	k. need
	l. better than
d T/[- / / /	and the Comment of th
True/False/Not End	ough information
1. A blended famil	y consists of one parent.
2. A nuclear family	is smaller than an extended family.
3. Parents and chil	dren are from the same generation.
4. The family has c	changed because of industrialization.
5. A single-parent	family and a blended family both have more than
one generation.	
6. In the 1920s, mo	st children in the United States lived in
blended familie	S.

7. The best way to raise children is in a nuclear family.
8. There is just one reason why the number of single-parent families has increased.
9. As countries industrialize, family size decreases.



Comprehension Questions

- 1. What is a nuclear family?
- 2. What is a blended family?
- 3. What is one benefit of living in an extended family?
- 4. What is one effect that industrialization has had on families?
- 5. How are families changing in your country?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 5 (lines 25–33)? Write it in a sentence.



Word Forms: Adjectives

These are some common adjective suffixes: -able, -al, -ful, -ive, -less, -like, -ous, -t, -y.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	socialize	society	social	socially
2.	industrialize	industry industrialization	industrial	industrially
3.	marry	marriage	marriageable	
4.	afford		affordable	affordably
5.	control	control	(un)controllable	(un)controllably
6.	limit	limit	limitless (un)limited	
7.	separate	separation	separable (in)separable	
8.	depend	dependence	dependable	dependably

1.	Industrialization causes serious	problems in
	a country.	
2.	Many countries are trying to	their economies.
3.	When his daughter reached a	age, he sent her to live
	with his sister.	
4.	For many people, a car is not	distant director
5.	If you drive too fast, you might lose	of the car. The
	car will become	
6.	The supply of petroleum in the Earth is not	ALTONIA HARMANAMA INI YA P
7.	The two children are	They start crying when they
	can't be together.	
8.	The last person who worked here was not _	He said
	that he would do things, but he didn't alwa	ys do them.





Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

1.	They live together in single-parent family.				
2.	In the United States, quarter of American children grow up in				
	single-parent families.				
3.	Juan and Nancy also have child.				
4.	For centuries, extended family was most common type				
	of family.				
5.	In extended family, mothers could work outside				
	home.				
6.	One of biggest changes in families in last century				
	has been decrease in number of extended families				
9200	the property of the second of				
	Summarizing Summarizing				
	www.lTl.2n011206.com				

A **summary** of a paragraph gives all the important information in the paragraph. It is usually just one sentence. A summary of a complete reading text has a few sentences.

Choose the best summary sentence for each paragraph.

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 15-24)
 - a. Carl Jacobs lives in an extended family that consists of his wife and children and his wife's parents.
 - b. There are different kinds of extended families, but they all consist of more than one set of parents and children.
 - c. Extended families consist of more than one set of parents and children.
- 2. Paragraph 6 (lines 34-44)
 - a. One of the biggest changes in American families has been the decrease in the number of extended families.
 - b. By the 1920s, most American children lived in nuclear families.
 - c. The growth of industry in the United States caused a decrease in the number of extended families and an increase in the number of nuclear families.





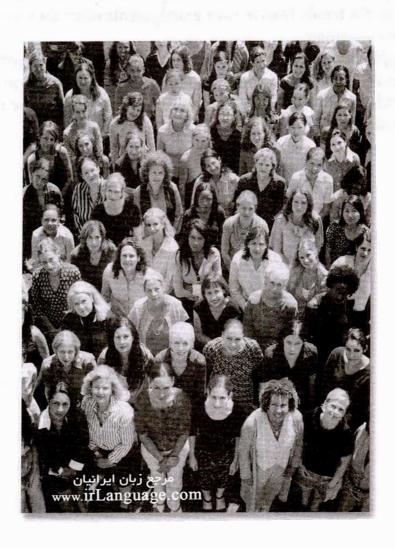
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. In your country, how are the family lives of you and your friends different from the family lives of your grandparents when they were young? Give examples.
- 2. Right now, do you live in a nuclear, blended, single-parent, or extended family? What do you think your family life will be like in the future? What kind of family will your children and grandchildren live in? Why do you think this?



Women and Change

lesson



Before You Read

- 1. In your country, do girls and boys get the same education?
- 2. Who does most of the work in your house?
- 3. How many women work in the government of your country? What do they do?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Many reports have been published on the rights of women.
- 2. The reports have a lot of good news, but they also have some **negative** news.
- 3. Women do most of the **domestic** work—for example, cooking and washing clothes.
- 4. Women do nearly 66% of the world's work.
- 5. Many programs help women, **as well as** men, improve their standard of living.

3 Women and Change



"Women hold up half the sky." This is an old Chinese saying. However, research suggests that perhaps women do more than their share of "holding up the sky."

- Many reports have been **published** on the conditions and rights of women **throughout** the world. Some of the news in the reports is very **positive**. For example, 90% of all countries have **official** organizations to improve the lives of women. More than
- half of the countries have laws to protect the rights of women, and 90% of all countries have **passed** laws to give women equal pay for equal work. WHO (World Health Organization) and UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund) have
- programs to improve the health of people in developing countries, **especially** women and children. Birth-control methods are now available to more than half of the women in the world. Almost half of the children in



school now are girls, a big change from the past,

because in many countries education was not available to girls.

The reports also have **negative** news. Although most countries have official organizations to improve women's lives, many of these organizations don't do
25 anything. Women make up 50% of the world's population, but they do **nearly** 66% of the world's work. They do most of the **domestic** work—for example, cooking and washing clothes. Millions of women also work outside the home. They have become 30 50% of the **workforce** in many countries. For this work, however, they earn about half as much as men, and, **of course**, they earn nothing for their domestic work.

Reports also show that there are still very few women in high government positions. In fact, only about 15% of the positions in government are held by women. In addition, more than half of the people who can't read and write are women. Being illiterate doesn't mean people are not intelligent. However, not being able to read and write does make it more difficult for people to change their lives.

In developing countries, where three quarters of the world's population lives, women produce more than half of the food. In Africa, 80% of all <u>agricultural</u> work is done by women. In some parts of Africa, this is a typical day for a woman. At 4:45 a.m., she gets up, washes, and eats. It takes her a half hour to walk to the <u>fields</u>, and she works there until 3:00 p.m. She collects firewood and gets home at 4:00. She spends the next hour and a half preparing food to cook. Then she collects water for another hour. From 6:30 to 8:30, she cooks. After dinner, she spends an hour washing the dishes and her children.

There are many programs to help people improve their agricultural skills. However, for years, these programs provided money and training for men but not for women. Now this is changing. International organizations and programs are helping women, as well as men, improve their agricultural production.

Finally, around 9:30 p.m., she goes to bed.

almost

total number of people working

naturally; clearly

jobs; places

farming



fields



Clearly, women's lives have changed in many ways.

Some of these changes have been positive, giving many women legal rights and better living conditions. Ideally, in the future, more and more women will benefit from new opportunities, good education, and legal rights.

	Vocabulary			
	published agriculture throughout	official illiterate pass	especially as well as positive	
1.	What book compar	ny	this book?	
2.	I like all kinds of fr	uit, but I	like	bananas.
3.	A	worker doe	es a family's house	work.
4.	There are many pro	ograms availabl	e to help	people
	learn to read and w	vrite.		
5.	Getting a new job v	was the most		thing that happened
	to her last year.			ak yedyanidir. 📆
6.	Overpopulation af			the standard
	of living.			
7.	In some countries,	school students	must	an exam
	before they gradua	te.		
8.	If you have \$9.80, y	ou have	ten	dollars.

b Vocabulary

	official of of one negative field publish pas		agricultural position nearly	throughout workforce domestic
1.	He wants to go to an		school to	learn about farming.
	Her 12-year-old son v			_
	wouldn't let him.			
3.	They put a fence arou	and the	so	that the cattle couldn't
	leave the farm.			
4.	After working at seve	eral low-pay	ing jobs, he finally	got a good
	altra	at a bank.		
5.	The	of a cou	intry is made up of	both men and women.
6.	There have been wars	S	human l	history.
7.	The child was unhap	py because l	nis teacher said son	nething
		about his w	riting.	
8.	WHO is an		organization of the	United Nations.
(Vocabulary Revi	ew: Defini	tions	
M	atch the words with their	r meaning.	enter en estre	
	1. relative	a. a perso	on who studies soc	riety
	2. divorced	b. becom	e an adult	maken and antel
	3. population	c. small j	ob	
	4. task	d. have e	nough money to b	uy (something)
_	5. sociologist	e. extrem	nely tired	
	6. majority	f. person	ı	
	7. grow up	g. numbe	er of people in an a	rea
	8. afford	h. way		
	9. descend	i. more t	han half	
	10. exhausted	j. family	member	
		k. no long	ger married	
		l. go dov	vn	



Use the text and this chart to answer the questions below.

age of each		of Total Work Put In by
	Men	Women
Cuts down forests, prepares fields	95	5
Turns the soil	7 0	30
Plants seeds and cuttings	50	50
Hoes and weeds	30	7 0
Gathers crops	40	60
Carries crops home	20	80
Stores crops	20	80
Processes food crops	10	90
Sells the extra crops	40	60
Carries water and fuel	10	90
Cares for domestic animals	50	50
Hunts	90	10
Feeds and cares for the family	5	95
Source: UN Handbook on Women in Africa.		

- 1. According to the chart, women in Africa do about _____ of the cooking.
 - a. 50%
 - b. 70%
 - c. 90%
- 2. _____ of the world's countries have official organizations to improve the life of women.
 - a. All but 90%
 - b. Half
 - c. All but 10%
- 3. The average woman earns _____ the average man.
 - a. more than
 - b. the same as
 - c. less than



4.	in the world are literate.
	a. More men than women
	b. More women than men
	c. About the same number of women and men
5.	In Africa, of the farmwork is done by men.
	a. 80%
	b. 50%
	c. 20%
6.	An illiterate person
	a. can't think
	b. can't speak
	c. can't read
7.	In an African village, men do about half of the
	a. weeding
	b. planting
	c. hunting
8.	In Africa, village carry most of the crops, water, and fuel.
	a. men



b. womenc. children

Comprehension Questions

- 1. What does the saying "Women hold up half the sky" mean?
- 2. How many countries have laws to protect the rights of women?
- 3. Why are more women than men illiterate?
- 4. Give a reason why some women work more hours than men.
- 5. What organizations have programs to improve the health of women?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of this reading? Write one or two sentences.



Scanning

Scan the reading to find answers to these questions. Write a short answer and the number of the line where you found the answer.

1.	What percentage of jobs are held by women?
2.	What percentage of positions in government are held by women?
3.	What percentage of countries have laws about equal pay?
4.	In Africa, what percentage of the farmwork do women do?
5.	What percentage of women have birth-control methods available?
6.	What percentage of children in school are boys?

h

Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

- 1. This is _____ old Chinese saying.
- 2. Some of _____ news in ____ reports is very positive.
- 3. For example, 90% of all _____ countries have ____ official organizations to improve ____ lives of ____ women.
- 4. Almost half of _____ children in ____ school now are ____ girls.
- 5. _____ millions of women also work outside _____ home.
- 6. More than half of _____ people who can't read and write are ____ women.
- 7. In _____ Africa, 80% of all agricultural work is done by ____ women.



There is always a noun after an article. There might be an adjective before the noun.

Women do most of the housework.

An illiterate person cannot read or write.

Choose a word from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	publish	publication publisher	published	
2.	pass	passage	Bert Bredstall	
3.		(il)literacy	(il)literate	
4.	position	position		
5.		agriculture	agricultural	agriculturally
6.		official	official	officially

1.	Newsweek is a popular
2.	The government a law requiring equal pay for equa
	work. The of this law made many people happy.
3.	is not a problem in Japan.
4.	For the photograph, he himself between his
	two daughters.
5.	Very few people work in in northern Russia. It is no
	an area.
6.	My brother is a government He says you can't get
	into a government building without papers.



www.irLanguage.com

Use the word but to connect a sentence from the second column with one from the first column. Use a comma before but. Write the new sentences on a separate piece of paper.

- 1. Some of the news in the reports is positive.
- 2. Half of the world's children are girls.
- 3. Many women work outside the home.
- 4. Rich countries have the fewest people.
- 5. It is possible to increase the amount of farmland.
- 6. There is enough water in the world.

- a. Only 41% go to school.
- b. They use the most natural resources.
- c. It can be increased only a little.
- d. Some of it is bad.
- e. Most of it is salt water.
- f. Their husbands don't help them with the housework.



Guided Writing

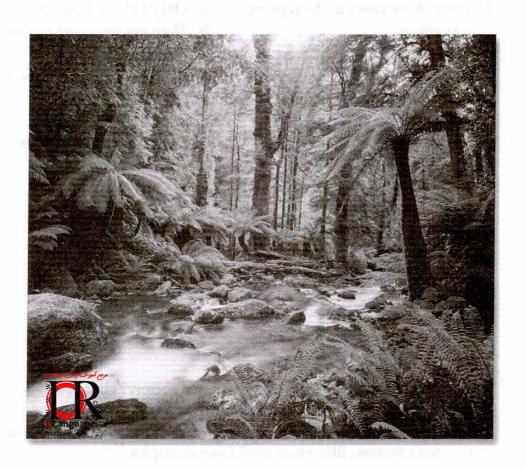
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Is it easy to change the life of women in a society? Give reasons for your answer.
- 2. In your country, is the life of a young woman today different from the lives of young women fifty years ago? Give examples.

Rain Forests

lesson

4



Before You Read

- 1. Do you have forests in your country? Describe them.
- 2. Compare the number of trees in your country today with the number of trees there 100 years ago. Do you think there are more trees, fewer trees, or about the same number?
- 3. What do you already know about tropical rain forests?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. People cut down a quarter of the trees to make fields for their cattle. They cut down the **remaining** trees for fuel or to sell the wood or to start farms.
- 2. The world needs more food, and it seems like a good idea to clear the rain forests and use the land for agriculture.
- 3. One **surprising** thing about rain forests is that the land under them is not very good. Most people think it is, but it isn't.

4 Rain Forests



Tropical rain forests are found in the Amazon region of South America, as well as in Central America, Africa, and Asia. Almost half of the rain forests are in Brazil.

Tropical rain forests are very old, thick forests where it rains more than 1.8 meters per year. The oldest rain forest in the world is in Sarawak. It is 10 million years old, and it has 2,500 different kinds of trees.

In rain forests, there are huge trees forty-five meters high. The lowest <u>branches</u> of the trees are about ten meters above the ground. Below the trees, there is another **level** of plants that consists of many kinds of smaller trees, shrubs, and flowers.

Each level of the rain forest is its own world. The lower level is protected by the trees above. The temperature and **humidity** (the amount of water, or **moisture**, in the air) stay about the same in the lower level. There is not much sunlight. In the upper level, the sun, rain, and wind change the temperature and humidity often.

An amazing animal world lives in the upper level. There are monkeys, members of the cat family, birds, area





20

and insects <u>such as</u> bees, butterflies, and many kinds of flies. Other animals that usually live on the ground also live here—mice, ants, and even earthworms.

for example

This upper level of the forest is thick with plant life because the trees are covered with other plants. Most plants get **nutrients** from the ground **through** their **roots**. These plants in the upper level take their nutrients from the trees they live on and from the other plants that die there.

food

The animals in the rain forest need "streets" so that they can move along the upper level without going down to the ground. They make <u>paths</u> along the branches of the trees. A researcher found a path that stretched for eighteen meters in one tree. One kind of tiny ant makes a path only three millimeters wide.

narrow ways for walking

Unfortunately, humans are still destroying the Earth's tropical rain forests. Nearly 80,000 square kilometers are being destroyed every year. About a quarter of the **destruction** comes from people cutting down trees for fuel. Another quarter is to make grassland for their cattle. The **remaining** trees are cut down to sell the wood or to start farms.

The population in cities all over the world is
growing, and more and more wood is needed to build
huge new buildings. For example, 5,000 trees from the
Sarawak rain forest in Malaysia were used to build just
one tall building. If people continue cutting down that
many trees in the Sarawak rain forest, all the trees could
be gone in eight years.

The world needs more food, and it seems like a good idea to clear the rain forests and use the land for agriculture. Many people think that the land under these huge, thick forests must be very rich in nutrients, but it isn't. This is another surprising thing about rain forests.

Most of the land in tropical rain forests is very poor. The plants are able to live because of all the dead **leaves** and other plant parts that fall to the ground. This **carpet** of dead plants provides nutrients for the living plants. When the land is cleared for agriculture, there are

floor covering

not any more

no longer any plants to die and provide nutrients for living plants. The cycle is broken. Agriculture is **unsuccessful** because the land cannot support it. Trees 65 cannot grow again because the carpet of dead plants is gone. The land becomes empty and useless.

Why should it matter to a businessperson, a farmer, or a student that people are destroying rain forests thousands of kilometers away? For anyone who takes 70 medicine, wears running shoes, or uses envelopes, the destruction of the rain forest does matter. Rain forests cover less than 6% of the Earth's area, but they have 100,000 kinds of plants, probably half of all the kinds of plants on the Earth. Three fourths of all known kinds of plants and animals call the rain forest their home. Twenty percent of our different kinds of medicine come from rain forests. The glue on an envelope and in shoes comes from tropical plants. Rain forests provide materials for hundreds of other products.

Rain forests are also very important to the world's climate. The Amazon rain forest alone receives about 30 to 40% of the total rainfall on the Earth and produces about the same percentage of the world's oxygen. Many scientists believe that the decreasing size of rain forests 85 will affect the climate on the Earth, making it uncomfortable or even dangerous for life.

The destruction of our rain forests is an international problem. One country—or even a few countries—cannot solve the problem alone. The nations of the world must work together to find a solution before it is too late.

80

a Vocabulary

	through destruction humidity	path region remain	branch no longer level	such as nutrients roots	
1.	. The northern	dedelitor	of Canada	is very cold.	
2	. He plans to	- 1 T P P P	_ in Brazil for	several years and th	ien
	return to England				
3.	When students do	o well in their	English classe	s, they move up to the	he next
4.				. She will rican classroom.	
5.	The	,			
				along the riv	er in
	the evening.			O all a	
7.	Α	is part o	of a tree.		
		_		live.	
	3. All living things need to live. 3. If you want to get to Canada from Mexico, you have to go				
		the United			
10.	The temperature a	and the	to the later	are both high in Ma	ılaysia.
b	Vocabulary				
	cleared	surprise	nutrients	path	
	successful	matter	moisture	destruction	1
	oxygen (O)		•		
1.	After dinner, they		the dis	hes from the table.	
2.	The living room h	as a wood flo	or, but the bedi	oom has	
	a				
3.	The	of the	rain forests sho	ould be a concern	
	for everyone.				
4	It doesn't		to me if we stay	at home or go to a	movie.

5.		_ is necessary for	or life.			
6.	6. People in Latin American countries Ecuador, Per					
	and Venezuela spea	k Spanish.				
7.	In cold climates, tree	es drop their _	u Mentri nist n	in the winter.		
8.	He's a	busine	essperson beca	use he works very hard		
9.	It was a	to see	him at the par	ty because he rarely		
	goes out.					
10.	The amount of		in the air is ca	alled humidity.		
				noiz refrengmin)		
	Vocabulary Rev	iew: Synonym	15			
Ma	tch the words that mea	n the same.	Should			
	1. gradually	a. very				
	2. nearly	b. slowly				
	3. such as	c. almost				
	4. extremely	d. not old				
	5. enclose	e. about				
	6. surprising	f. for examp				
	7. fresh	g. unexpecte	d			
	8. turn into	h. become				
	9. humid	i. moist				
	10. roughly	j. surround				
1001000	of the second of the					
d	True/False/Not E	nough Inform	ation			
	1. Some rain fo	rests are not in	the tropics.			
			•	per level of a rain forest		
	than in the lo	0	11			
			nts support the	e life of other plants.		
	4. Plants get nu					
				ters of tropical rain		
	•	year so that they		•		



6. The land in tropical rain forests is rich.
7. Tropical rain forest land can support forests although it cannot support agriculture.
8. Material from rain forests is used to make cassette tapes.
9. Earthworms make paths on the branches of trees in rain forests.
10. There are rain forests in Brazil.
11. Rain forests have 100,000 kinds of plants.



Comprehension Questions

- 1. How is the weather in the lower level of a rain forest different from the weather in the upper level?
- 2. Why is it amazing to find mice and earthworms in the upper level?
- 3. Where do most plants in the upper level get their nutrients?
- 4. Why do people cut down trees in rain forests?
- 5. Where do plants in the lower level get their nutrients?
- 6. What happens to the land when the trees are cut down?
- 7. Why are rain forests important to the world's climate?
- 8. What are some other reasons that rain forests are important to all of us?



Paraphrasing

Use your own words to say the ideas found in these sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.

- 1. The plants in the upper level take their nutrients from the trees they live on and from the other plants that die there.
- 2. When the land is cleared for agriculture, there are no longer any plants to die and provide nutrients for living plants.



Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 13–19)?
- 2. Write your own sentence for the main idea of paragraph 13 (lines 87–90).





Cause and Effect

Match the causes in the first column with the effects in the second column. Write the letter of the effect by the number of the cause.

Cause

- __ 1. There are fewer rain forests.
- _ 2. The trees are all cut down.
- _ 3. A carpet of dead plants provides nutrients.
- __ 4. Animals want to travel in the upper level.
- _ 5. The lower level is protected by the upper level.

Effect

- a. The weather doesn't change much in the lower level.
- b. They make paths along branches.
- c. This may affect the climate on the Earth.
- d. Tropical plants can live on poor land.
- e. Tropical land becomes useless.



Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

Verb		Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		tropics	tropical	
2.	humidify	humidity	humid	
3.	moisten	moisture	moist	
4.	empty	emptiness	empty	10
5.	destroy	destruction	destructive	destructively
6.	surprise	surprise	surprising	surprisingly
7.	remain	remainder	remaining	
8.	succeed	success	successful	successfully

1.	Indonesia	is	in	the	
----	-----------	----	----	-----	--

2. It's hot and ______ today.

3. It's rainy today, and my skin is	
4. After the children left, there was an in	the house.
5. War is It takes human life and	
cities, villages, and agricultural land.	
6. The beauty of the forest me. It is a	
beautiful place.	
7. We ate half of the salad and put the in	
the refrigerator.	
8. She flew the plane across the country.	After her
trip, her friends had a big party.	
Find each noun substitute in the reading. Decide what it is a substitute usually a substitute for one word, but it might be a substitute for a will In parts of Africa, this is a typical day for a village woman. she gets up, washes, and eats. (She is a substitute for a village woman.)	hole sentence. At 4:45 a.m.,
1. page 90 line 28 their	
2. page 90 line 29 they	
3. page 90 line 30 there 4. page 90 line 32 they	
5. page 90 line 55 it	
6. page 90 line 55 this	
7. page 91 line 64 it	
8. page 91 line 72 they	
o. page 71 line 72 liney	
k Articles	
Put an article in each blank if it is necessary.	
 Below trees, there is another level of plants. Fach level of trees to its own world. 	
2. Each level of rain forest is its own world.	sture in the
3 temperature and humidity (amount of water, or mois air) stay about same.	stare, in the

4.	In upper level,	sun,	rain, and wind char	nge
	temperature and humi	dity often.		
5.	Most plants get	nutrients from	ground through	their roots
6.	These plants in	upper level take the	eir nutrients from	trees
	they live on and from .	other plants	that die there.	
7.	researcher four	nd path that	stretched for	eighteen
	meters in one tree.			
8.	One kind of tin	y ant makes	path only three	
	millimeters wide.			

1

Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Why are rain forests important?
- 2. You are walking through a rain forest. Describe what you see, hear, smell, and touch.

The Garbage Project

lesson

5



Before You Read

- 1. The photograph on this page shows a landfill. Based on the photograph, how would you define a landfill?
- 2. Where do people in your country put old cars, old newspapers, and old clothes?
- 3. What do you do with food that is no longer fresh?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. **Archaeologists** study buried houses, broken objects, and other old things to learn about ancient societies.
- 2. Students had to travel to **landfills**, where cities bury the things they don't want.
- 3. Many of the things we throw away, such as newspapers, glass bottles, and some metals, are **recyclables**. We shouldn't throw them away.
- 4. We are in **deep** trouble. If we don't do something soon, it may be too late.
- 5. Hazardous materials contain poisonous chemicals.

5 The Garbage Project

Most **archaeologists** study buried houses, broken objects, and old **garbage** to learn important things about ancient societies. At the University of Arizona in the United States, however, archaeology students are

- investigating today's garbage. They hope to learn important things about <u>modern</u> society by studying its garbage. The Garbage Project started at the University of Arizona in 1973. Since then, students have studied garbage in cities in the United States, Canada,
- 10 and Mexico.

To study the modern world's garbage, students had to travel to landfills, the places where cities bury their garbage. While the students were studying the garbage, they wore special clothes and used safety equipment.

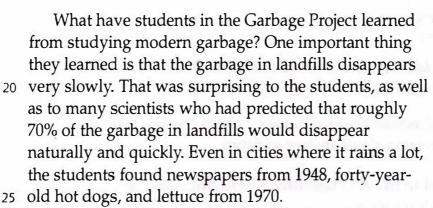
15 Students were also very careful when they opened bags of garbage.





today's





irLanguage.com

The Garbage Project also <u>revealed</u> that what people say they do is often very different from what they <u>actually</u> do. The archaeology students asked people what they bought, ate, and drank, and then they compared this to what people threw away. For some reason, the two didn't match. For example, the students found many more empty bottles of alcohol than people said they drank.

showed

really

Information from the Garbage Project has also
helped us to see how much garbage we actually put in landfills. The students are hopeful that this will encourage us to find better ways to <u>dispose of</u> our garbage. Of course, the best way to dispose of garbage depends on what kind of garbage it is: regular garbage,

throw away

dangerous

hazardous materials, or recyclables, such as newspapers, glass bottles, and some metals. Regular garbage goes to regular landfills. Hazardous materials, on the other hand, contain poisonous chemicals or metals. They shouldn't go into regular landfills.

Ordinary houses are full of hazardous waste. The most problematic hazardous waste in homes is batteries. When batteries end up in a landfill, they often break open. The poison inside them moves through rain water and other liquids to the bottom of the landfill.



Then it can pollute the natural water in the ground. People could avoid this problem by using rechargeable batteries.

Another hazardous waste from homes is motor oil. When people pour old motor oil on the ground or throw it in the garbage, it poisons the environment. They should recycle old motor oil instead.





Unfortunately, recycling is expensive. It takes time, equipment, and special treatment. Toronto began the first recycling program in North America in 1982. The city started by recycling newspapers, and later it added glass and cans to its recycling program. When students from the Garbage Project studied the Toronto landfills, they found that recycling was having a positive effect. Since 1982, Toronto has reduced the amount of garbage going into its landfills by 25%.

A health official once said, "We're in <u>deep</u> trouble here. We have too much garbage, our landfills are closing, and we can't open new ones because people don't want them. If we don't do something about our garbage, we're going to be buried in it." The health official made that statement in 1889! Clearly, our garbage problem is not new, but as the world's population continues to grow, it will become a bigger and bigger problem.

(This article is based on an interview with Dr. William Rathje, the director of the Garbage Project at the University of Arizona.)

serious

Vocabulary

	•	archaeologist battery actual		moder	n a cara i ma	
1.	I am not very		that pe	ople will	start recycling more	0
	their garbage.					
2.	The hole in th	e street is a		to ca	rs.	
		n't work without				1
4.	I know we ma	ake a lot of garba	ge, but I dor	ı't know t	the	
5.		societies				
	ancient societi		100			
6.	An	needs	to have a st	rong inte	rest in history.	
		and cans are exa				
		the grass, please	-	•		
	•	; sprea	-			
9.		s difficult to				
					her true identity.	
93000	1 20 0210 02101					
	Vocabular	У				
	rechargeable	investigated	hazar	dous	on the other hand	
	archaeologist	_		lly	reveal	
	recycle	deep	garba	ge	batteries	
1.	Don't throw th	nat empty juice b	ottle away. V	<i>V</i> e can	i	t.
2.	They	the	area for a we	eek, but tl	ney couldn't	
	find anything.					
3.	She didn't feel	comfortable wit	h him becau	se he ask	ed a lot of	
		questions				
4.	I could stay ho	ome tomorrow ar	nd get some	work dor	ne;	
		, I could ta	0			
5.		es is				

6. They said they recycled	all of their newspapers	, but
the	ey didn't recycle any at	all.
7. The	_ for my new camera ar	re
I just plug them in overr	night, and in the morni	ng they are as good
as new.		
8. That	_ smells terrible.	
9. That woman is a famous	3	She discovered an
ancient city.		
10. I don't want to	in a boring	job. I hope to find an
exciting job.		
Vocabulary Review: Match the words that mean the	W-100	
1. get along	a. literate	
2. remote	b. on time	
3. separate	c. increase	
4. illiterate	d. underpopulated	
5. roughly		
6. hollow	f. combine	
7. delayed	g. nearby	
8. no longer	h. fight	
9. humid	i. training	
10. decrease	j. group	
11. overpopulated	k. exactly	
	l. still	
	m. dry	
Multiple Choice		
1. The Garbage Project is		
a. a university program	b. a type of landfill	c. both a and b
2. Poisonous chemicals pollu		
a. water	b. wastes	c. batteries

3.	The Garbage Project is mor	re than years old	l.	
	a. twenty	b. thirty	c.	fifty
4.	The first recycling program	n in North America was	in	
	a. the United States	b. Mexico	c.	Canada
5.	Garbage in landfills disapp	oears		
	a. slowly	b. completely	c.	quickly
6.	The most serious hazardou	ıs waste in homes is		
	a. newspapers	b. batteries	c.	motor oil
7.	The Garbage Project shows	ed that people		
	a. don't know where their	garbage goes		
	b. sometimes say one thing	g and do something else		
	c. cannot change their beh	avior toward garbage		
8.	Hazardous waste comes fro	om		
	a. ordinary houses	b. factories	c.	both a and b

Comprehension Questions

Use the text to answer these questions.

- 1. Name two kinds of hazardous waste in homes.
- 2. Why is hazardous waste dangerous?
- 3. Why did students use safety equipment when they went to the landfills?
- 4. What is the best way to dispose of garbage?
- 5. What is the connection between the Garbage Project and archaeology?
- 6. Why did the Garbage Project go to Toronto?
- 7. What are three things that we can recycle?
- 8. Do you think the problem of disposing of garbage is serious? Give a reason for your answer.



Main Idea

- 1. Write a sentence that gives the main idea for the paragraph that starts on line 17.
- 2. Which sentence is the main idea of the last paragraph?



11/11/11	
tunki	

Two-Word Verbs

				-	ou are there for		ght or tell the
	drop out =		•		•		
	get through =			am	pie, to serioor,		
	0			، ماء،			hana it halamaa
	•					e or w	here it belongs
	think over =			•			
1.	I can't give you r	ny a	nswer right a	iwa	y. I have to $_$	- Unit	
	it		//				
2.	You have to	10		at t	ne airport forty	y-five r	ninutes before
	your flight leaves						
3.	Did you		witl	n yo	our homework	yet?	
4.	David didn't fini	sh co	ollege. He			after	his second year.
5.	Please		the fo	od			in the
	refrigerator. Don	't lea	ve it out on	he	table.		
BBOOK	au.,						
	Compound	Wor	·ds				
	Compound	•••					
	se a word from the f			•			
on	e-word or two-word	l com	ipound. (More	tha	n one answer n	iay be p	ossible.)
_		1.	work	a.	report		
_		2.	search	b.	land		
_		_ 3.	fire	C.	bag		
	4	4.	food	d.	work		
		5.	half	e.	light		
			sun		place		
			house		production		
			research	_	party		
			garbage		wood		
			farm				
		10.	Iallii	,	way		



Connecting Words

Use and to connect a sentence from the first column with a sentence from the second column. Use a comma before and. Write your answers on a separate piece of paper.

- 1. Studying old garbage can teach a. They open bags of garbage us about ancient societies.
- 2. Students in the Garbage Project wear safety equipment.
- 3. We dispose of regular garbage in regular landfills.
- 4. Hazardous waste contains poisonous chemicals.
- 5. The poison inside batteries can go to the bottom of a regular landfill.

- very carefully.
- b. Studying fresh garbage can teach us about modern society.
- c. It can pollute the natural water in the ground.
- d. We should dispose of hazardous waste in special landfills or by recycling.
- e. We must keep it out of regular landfills.



Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 45–52)?



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe the Garbage Project. Tell what it is, who is in it, what they do, and why.
- 2. What kind of hazardous waste do we have in our homes, and how can we dispose of it?



Video Highlights

a Before You Watch

1. In Lesson 3, you read about women in different parts of the world. Write two facts you remember about women and education.

a. _____

2. Read the dictionary definition of *obey*. Do you always obey your parents? What happened when you disobeyed your parents? Discuss with a partner.

obey /ou' bei, a-/ v. [I;T] **obeyed, obeying, obeys** to do what is asked or ordered: *Soldiers obey their commander's orders*.

b As You Watch

In this video you will meet a girl named Lalita. Watch the video and decide if the sentences are true or false. If the sentence is false, correct the mistake.

- _____ 1. Lalita lives in Pakistan.
- ______ 2. Only one in four girls goes to school where Lalita lives.
- _____ 3. Lalita disobeyed her parents.
- 4. She went to a village school when she was 13.
- _____ 5. Lalita went to a special boarding school when she was 18.
- _____ 6. Lalita teaches karate now.
- ______ 7. Lalita's parents are happy that she goes to school now.



After You Watch

1. What was life like for Lalita, her parents, and her village before she went to school? What is life like now? Write notes in the chart. Discuss your answers in class.

		After
The state of the second st	The State of the S	
The second of the second contract of the seco		
mate pripate layers at the early state.		John States of 2

2. Circle adjectives that you think describe Lalita. Discuss in class why you chose those words.

brave proud clever shy weak
positive successful modern expert kind
normal strong rude wealthy lonely

3. Using the words in Exercise 2, write sentences describing Lalita.

Example: Lalita is proud because she helped many girls in her village.

Activity Page

Crossword Puzzle 3 5 10 11 Across 3. Another word for dangerous is _ 7. More than half of something is a _____. 8. People who study old things are called ____ 9. The opposite of *negative* is _____. 11. Your aunts, uncles, and cousins are your _____. 12. The _____ of a plant are usually under the ground. Down

- 1. The opposite of ancient is _____.
- 2. A _____ pain is a long-lasting pain.
- 4. People who study how societies work are called _____.
- 5. Another word for *slowly* is _____.
- 6. An _____ person is someone who can't read.
- 10. The opposite of *full* is _____.



مرجع كوزش زوان ايرانيان

Dictionary Page

Working with Word Forms

1. Fill in the chart with the missing forms of each word. Write an "X" if a form does not exist. Check your dictionary if you are not sure.

Verb	Noun	Adjective
destroy	destruction	destructive
recharge		t
dispose		
		surprising
	literacy	
	hazard	
	protection	

2. Your dictionary has sample sentences to help you understand differences in meaning. For example, industrious and industrial are both adjective forms of *industry*. However, they are not used in the same way. Read these sentences to understand the difference:

Ali is wealthy because he is so *industrious*. Tokyo is a modern, *industrial* city.

3. Use the information on this page to help you complete these sentences.

Example: Floods and earthquakes can cause a lot of destruction.

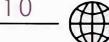
a. Most parents will do everything they can to

their children from harm.

b. A ______ person can read and write.

_____ materials are dangerous.

d. It is important for people to _ waste in ways that will not harm the environment.



مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com

A Mishmash, or Hodgepodge

unit 3

The world is so full of a number of things, I'm sure we should all be as happy as kings.

—Robert Louis Stevenson



www.irLanguage.com

Roadrunners

lesson



Before You Read

- 1. How would you describe this bird to another person?
- 2. Why do you think this bird is called a roadrunner?
- 3. What would you like to find out about this kind of bird?





The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Roadrunners live in the desert **zone** of the southwestern United States.
- 2. A roadrunner eats plants **once in a while**, but it is mostly a meat eater.
- 3. The bird doesn't always eat the food right there. Sometimes it carries the food home.
- 4. Most of its **diet** is insects, but it also catches birds, mice, and other small animals.
- 5. The male bird gives the female bird **presents** such as twigs (tiny branches of a tree) or something to eat.

1 Roadrunners

(8)

If you say the word *roadrunner* to people in the United States, they will probably think of a famous cartoon program that was on television. In the cartoon, a funny-looking bird was always outsmarting a coyote.

5 The bird in this cartoon program was based on a bird called a roadrunner.

Real roadrunners live in the desert **zone** of the southwestern United States and northern Mexico. A roadrunner is a bird, but it can fly only about as much as a chicken can. People gave it its name because they usually see it running across a road, but, of course, a roadrunner spends more time among the plants of the desert than it does on roads.

The roadrunner is quite a large bird—about forty-five centimeters long and twenty-five centimeters high. People laugh when it runs because it looks so funny. It holds its head <u>straight</u> out in front, and its tail

not curved or bent



sticks straight out in back. It takes long steps and can run 30 kilometers an hour.

A roadrunner eats an amazing variety of food. Most of its **diet** is insects, but it also catches birds, mice, and other small animals. It is even brave enough to catch tarantulas, <u>snakes</u>, and black widow <u>spiders</u>. A roadrunner eats plants once in a while, but it is 25 mostly a meat eater. The bird doesn't always eat the food right there. Sometimes it carries the food home.

In the spring, a male roadrunner begins looking for a female to be his mate. When he finds one, he gives her 30 **presents**—snakes to eat or twigs (tiny branches of a tree) to use in building a nest. After they build their nest, the female lays eggs and the male and female raise their young.

Some roadrunners become very friendly with 35 people. One couple in Arizona feeds a pair of roadrunners that come to their house every day. One at a time, each bird makes a noise outside the window. If someone doesn't immediately give the bird a piece of hamburger, the bird knocks on the window with its

40 beak. According to this couple, the birds behave like a pet dog or cat. For example, when the woman whistles, the birds come running. When the man leaves the house, the roadrunners walk along behind him. Clearly, roadrunners are not shy.

Another couple in Arizona feeds a pair of 45 roadrunners that come right into their house. The two birds will stand on a chair or table and watch television, and they seem really interested in what is happening on the program. In the spring, the male sometimes 50 brings gifts to the couple—an insect, or a leaf or twig for building a nest.

In the winter, when nighttime temperatures in the desert can be 20°C colder than daytime temperatures, a roadrunner lowers its body temperature during the 55 night to save body heat. In the morning, however, the bird needs to warm up quickly so that it can run if it needs to. To warm up quickly, the roadrunner stands





makes a sound by blowing air through the lips

20

with its back to the sun. It holds out its wings and **lifts** the feathers on its upper back. Under these

feathers, there is a dark **spot** on the bird's skin. This spot collects heat from the weak morning sun and quickly warms the bird's body and raises its body temperature.

Some people in Mexican villages use roadrunner meat as medicine. They believe that because roadrunners can eat poisonous animals and not die, their meat should be good for human sickness.

Maybe we shouldn't laugh at the roadrunner.
Even though it looks funny when it runs, it has
developed a special way to keep warm, and it can eat poisonous animals. It can even make friends with humans. It fits into its environment very well, and it doesn't matter that it looks funny.

perhaps although

a Vocabulary

	present	diet	straight	shy
	mate	knock	fit	lift
	even though	snakes	maybe	whistled
1.	Some	are dan	ngerous, but mos	st are not.
2.	Both the female b	ird and her		take care of the young.
3.	On the	part o	of the road, peop	le drive a lot faster.
4.	Tourists don't usu	ially	into th	eir surroundings
	because they talk	and act different	ly than everyone	e else.
5.	The class is going	to walk to the m	iuseum	it is
	raining hard.			
6.	The majority of pe	eople in China li	ve on a	based on
	rice and vegetable	es.		
7.	I thought it was a	roadrunner, but		it wasn't.
8.	John	for a tax	ki, and one stopp	ed.
9.	I can	the box	, but I can't carry	it very far.
10.	When she finished	d college, Joan re	ceived a car fron	n her parents as
	a			



*	100	
8		
ž		,
83	6000h	

Vocabulary

	knock	carries	spot	and the second	once in a while	
	spider	shy	stick	out	lifts	
	fits	snakes	nest		zones	
1.	The largest		in the	world are me	ore than thirty	
	feet long.					
2.	When I heard	a	at	the door, I w	vent to answer it.	
3.	3. Mary watches television a lot, but she goes to the movies					
	only					
4.					ght.	
5.	Don't	71.4	your tongu	e; it is very in	npolite.	
					d she can't get it out.	
	The Earth has					
8.	He usually		his wa	llet in his po	cket.	
9.	Birds build a _		in th	e spring.		
10.	Even though sl	ne is very		, she is	good at	
	making speech	es.				
Colle						
C	Vocabulary	Review:	Definitions			
Mat	ch the words wit					
	1. hazardo	ous	a. print and d	istribute boo	ks	
	2. literate		b. moisture in	the air		
	3. landfill		c. someone w	ho studies ar	ncient things	
No.	4. humidi	ty	d. someone w	ho studies fa	milies	
_	5. publish		e. for example	9		
	6. region		f. having notl	ning inside		
	7. archaeo	logist	g. able to read	and write		
	8. recyclab	ole	h. area			
	9. empty		i. very dange	rous		
	10. such as		j. domestic			
			k. a place for g	garbage		
			l. able to be u	sed more tha	n once	



d True/False/Not Enough Information

1.	The roadrunner runs around the desert, looking for food.
2.	Roadrunners live only in Mexico and the United States.
3.	The female gives the male gifts in the spring.
4.	A roadrunner is afraid of people and stays away from them.
5.	This bird can learn to depend on people.
6.	A big difference between daytime and nighttime temperatures
	is typical in the desert.
7.	A roadrunner uses a lot of energy keeping warm in winter.



Comprehension Questions

1. Explain why the roadrunner is not a typical bird.

 $_{-}$ 8. The roadrunner is a typical bird.

- 2. What does a roadrunner eat?
- 3. Why does a male give gifts to a female?
- 4. Why do people laugh at the roadrunner?
- 5. Explain how the roadrunner gets warm in winter.
- 6. Do you think sick people will get better if they eat roadrunner meat? Explain your answer.
- 7. Do you think it is a good idea to feed wild animals? Give a reason.
- 8. Explain how a roadrunner fits into its environment.



Main Idea

Many paragraphs have one sentence that gives the main idea. It can be in different places in a paragraph.

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 20–27)?
- 2. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 34–44)?
- 3. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 9 (lines 64–67)?
- 4. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 10 (lines 68–73)?





Word Forms

Nouns are often used to describe other nouns. The meaning is different than when the adjective form of the same word is used.

Cuba had a literacy program in the 1960s.

A literate person can read and write.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. Then circle any nouns in the sentences that describe another noun.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		environment	environmental	environmentally
2.	complicate	complication	(un)complicated	
3.	hope	hope	hopeful hopeless	hopefully
4.	waste	waste	wasteful	wastefully
5.	dispose	disposal	disposable	Abjoed #0 + C.F. &
6.	depend (on)	(in)dependence	(in)dependent	(in)dependently
7.	succeed	success	successful	successfully
8.	vary	variety variation	various	
9.	finance	finances	financial	financially
10.	know	knowledge	(un)known knowledgeable	(un)knowingly knowledgeably

1.	Water pollution is an problem.
2.	This is a problem, and I can't find the solution.
3.	There was a bad accident on the highway this morning. I am
	that no one died.
4.	Some products from factories can be reused.



5.	Doctors and dentists use gloves so that they don't
	spread disease from one patient to another.
6.	Instead of working in groups, we are supposed to work
7.	The movie was a huge, making its director a happy
	and rich person.
8.	A supermarket sells a large of products.
9.	If you don't stop spending so much money, you are going to have serious problems.
10.	Barbara is very about birds. She has been studying
	them for years.
	Prepositions
Put	a preposition in each blank.
1.	The bird this cartoon program was based a bird called
	a roadrunner.
2.	Roadrunners live the desert zone the United States
	and Mexico.
3.	It spends more time the plants the desert than it does
	roads.
4.	Once a while, it eats plants.
5.	the spring, a male roadrunner begins looking a mate.
6.	Roadrunners can also become friendly people.
7.	The birds come one a time and make a noise the window.
8.	The bird knocks the window its beak.
9.	These birds come right the house.
	They seem really interested what is happening the program.
11.	the winter, nighttime temperatures the desert can be 20°C
	colder than daytime temperatures.
12.	To warm up quickly, the roadrunner stands its back
	the sun.





Connecting Words

Use **even though** to connect a sentence from the first column with one from the second column. Write the new sentences on a separate sheet of paper.

- 1. A roadrunner is considered to be a bird.
- 2. The Garbage Project studies landfills.
- 3. Rain forests cannot support agriculture.
- 4. We still use petroleum in cars.
- 5. Women do most of the domestic work.
- a. They have plants.
- b. It is sometimes dangerous.
- c. They work outside the home too.
- d. We know it pollutes the air.
- e. It can't fly very far.



Summarizing

Which sentence is the best summary?

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 20-27)
 - a. It eats insects, mice, and other small animals.
 - b. It eats both plants and meat.
 - c. It eats a large variety of food, both plants and meat.
- 2. Paragraphs 6 and 7 (lines 34-51)
 - a. Roadrunners follow people, ask for food, and watch television.
 - b. Roadrunners can become friendly with people.
 - c. Roadrunners sometimes bring gifts to people.
- 3. Paragraph 8 (lines 52-63)
 - a. Temperatures are much colder at night than during the day.
 - b. A roadrunner has an unusual way to keep warm in winter.
 - c. A roadrunner collects heat from the sun through a black spot on its back.





Guided Writing



Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe a roadrunner. Include the three most interesting things about a roadrunner, in your opinion.
- 2. Exactly how does a roadrunner fit into its environment?





Before You Read

- 1. What are some common problems airplane passengers have?
- 2. What makes you nervous when you are flying in an airplane?
- 3. Do any of these things make you nervous—standing on the roof of a building, giving a speech, snakes, or spiders?





Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. It's smart to be afraid of some things. For example, being afraid of poisonous spiders is **logical**.
- 2. Some people are afraid of going through a **tunnel** on a highway.
- 3. A plane **crash** is always in the news, but we never hear about the millions of flights every year that are safe.
- They listen to a tape recording of an airplane takeoff and landing at an airport.

2 Afraid to Fly



How do you feel about flying in an airplane? Do you find it boring, exciting, or downright **terrifying**? People who have to fly all the time for business often find it boring. People who fly only once in a while think

5 it's exciting. However, some people feel only terror when they get on an airplane. Their **fear** of flying can prevent them from traveling to other countries or visiting friends far away.

It's smart to be afraid of some things. For example,
being afraid of poisonous spiders is logical. However, if
you are afraid of all spiders, even harmless ones, you
have an illogical fear, or a phobia. Three common
phobias are fear of heights, fear of being enclosed in a
small area, and fear of being in a large open area. It is
not logical to be afraid of these things when there is no

Fear of flying is another phobia. A plane **crash** is always in the news, but we never hear about the

danger, but a phobia is not logical.

very frightening

not dangerous

plural noun for high



millions of flights every year that are safe. Riding in a car is thirty times more dangerous than flying, but most of us are not afraid every time we get into a car. It is not logical to be afraid of flying, but research indicates that about 12% of people have this fear.



People with a phobia about flying are afraid for one or more reasons. They might be afraid of heights. People who have a fear of heights avoid high places, and if they are in a high-rise building, they don't look out the windows.



They might also be afraid of being in an enclosed place like an elevator or a <u>tunnel</u> on a highway. When they get on an airplane, they can't get out until the end of the flight, and the flight might last several hours.

People with a fear of flying might be afraid of the crowds and all the noise and people rushing around at an airport. This especially **bothers** older people.

Some people are afraid of the unknown. They don't understand the technology of flying and can't believe that a huge airplane can stay up in the air.

that a huge airplane can stay up in the air.

Others are afraid of <u>loss</u> of control. They need to
control every **situation** they are in. When they drive a car, they have some chance of avoiding an **accident**. In a plane, they have no control over anything. It terrifies

them to give up control to the pilot and the rest

of the crew.

For some people, a fear of flying is not important because they don't really need to fly. But what about someone who works for an international company? What about an entertainer who has to sing in twenty different places in a month? These people have to fly if they want to continue in their professions.

There is help for these people. There are special classes in which people learn how to control their fear. They probably can't lose it, but they can learn to control it. Then they can fly when they need to, even though they probably won't enjoy it.

The class visits an airport and learns how airplane **traffic** is controlled and how planes are kept in safe condition. A pilot talks about flying through storms, the

noun for lose





different noises an airplane makes, and air safety in general. The class learns to do relaxation exercises, and the people talk about their fear.

Next, the class listens to tape recordings of a **takeoff** and landing, and later the people ride in a plane on the ground around the airport. Finally, they are ready to take a short flight.

The <u>instructors</u> of these classes are sometimes **psychologists.** They say that between 80 and 90% of the people who take the classes are successful. They still have their phobia, but they learn to control their fear.

teachers

70 Some of them even learn to enjoy flying.



Vocabulary

	terror	height	fear	logical	
	situation	crash	takeoff	tunnels	
	harm	bother	phobia	losses	
1.	A plane	Select in	_ usually kills	a lot of people.	
2.	Tom found h	imself in a diff	icult	, and	he didn't know
	what to do.				
3.	A	is an	n illogical fear (of something.	
4.	_	is a ve	ery strong word	l for fear.	
5.		is the	feeling you hav	ve when you are	afraid.
6.	Ali's compan	ıy had so many	y financial	Int.	that it went
	out of busine	ess.			
7.	Some dogs b	ite, but most of	f them won't $_$	The second second	anyone.
8.	There are sev	eral	unc	der the rivers from	m Manhattan
	Island to Nev	w Jersey and th	e other parts o	f New York.	
9.	After		the airplane cr	ew usually bring	s around
	drinks and fo	ood.			
10.	What is the _		of the tall	lest building in y	our city?



b Vocabulary

	bother	accidents	tunnels	psycho
	terrified	traffic	in general	harmle
	logical	instructor	terrifying	
1.	There is a lot of		on the roads l	between 4 and
	when people leav	ve work to go	home.	
2.	Anne was		when she saw a car	r coming strai
	at her.			
3.	Many more peop	ole die in car_	t	han in plane ι
4.	A	can hel	p you learn to contro	ol your fear.
5.	An	is a te	acher.	
6.	It's raining today	, but	the wea	ther here is p
7.	What is the		_ thing to do when	the telephone
8.	For some people,	descending to	o the ocean floor wo	uld be a
		experienc	ee.	
9.	Most snakes are		; only a few ki	inds are poisc
10.	Please don't		me now. I'm busy	y.

C Vocabulary Review

Cross out the word that does not belong with the other two.

- 1. roots, snakes, branches
- 2. once, couple, pair
- 3. knock, touch, run
- 4. threaten, take care of, help
- 5. even, even though, although
- 6. often, sometimes, once in a while
- 7. pollution, surroundings, environment
- 8. twenty-five, two-thirds, 40%
- 9. hazardous, dangerous, positive
- 10. married, divorced, published





Multiple Choice

1.	may think flying is boring.	
	a. People who fly once in a while	
	b. People who fly often	
_	c. People who have a phobia about flying	
2.	A phobia is	
	a. positive	
	b. illogical c. chemical	
_		
3.	About of people are affaird to fry.	
	a. 070	
	b. 12% c. 15%	
1		
4.	A person with a fear of enclosed places doesn't like	
	a. walking on a path	
	b. high placesc. being in a tunnel	
_	0	
Э.	especially bother order people.	
	a. Crowds at airportsb. High-rise buildings	
	c. Spiders	
6		
O.	A fear of flying is not important to some people because a. they are entertainers	
	b. they don't need to fly	
	c. they can take a class about flying	
7	The instructor of a class for people who are afraid of	
٠.		
	flying a. explains about airplane crashes	
	c takes them to an airport	
Q		
0.	More than of the people who take these classes are successful a. 12%	•
	b. 80%	
	c. 90%	
	<u></u> , , , , ,	





Comprehension Questions

- 1. Have you ever flown in an airplane? If you have, when was the last time you flew?
- 2. What are two examples of phobias?
- 3. Why aren't most people afraid when they get into a car?
- 4. Give four reasons people are afraid of flying.
- 5. Give four examples of people who need to fly.
- 6. What are three things that people learn in a class for those who are afraid of flying?
- 7. How does learning how airplane traffic is controlled help people who are afraid of flying?
- 8. Why does the class learn about the different noises a plane makes?
- 9. How do relaxation exercises help the people in the class?



Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 8 (lines 39–44)?
- 2. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 11 (lines 56–61)?
- 3. Write a sentence for the main idea of the last paragraph.



Word Forms: Adverbs

Adverbs describe verbs. They also describe adjectives and other adverbs. Many adverbs end in -ly— for example, badly and nicely. But there also are a few adjectives that end in -ly—for example, friendly and lovely. There are also some common adverbs that do not end in -ly, such as fast and hard.

Please return to the office immediately.

Your solution to this math problem is completely wrong.

Ali worked especially hard today.

Ann is a friendly person.

Mike works hard at his job.



Sometimes an adverb or an adverbial phrase describes the whole sentence. It is followed by a comma.

Most importantly, you must hand in a report of the meeting by tomorrow morning.

Ordinarily, the class finishes at 2:00. Today, it will last until 2:30 because we have a special lecture.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		accident	accidental	accidentally
2.		profession	professional	professionally
3.	secrete	secret	secretive	secretly
4.	separate	separation	separate	separately
5.	fear	fear	fearful fearless	fearfully fearlessly
6.	lose	loss	lost	
7.	terrify	terror terrorist	terrified terrifying	terrifyingly

1.	9	dropped a glass of water on	
	a customer. Even though it was a	n, he lost his job.	
2.	They did aj	ob on my house. No one could have done	
	it better.		
3.	She took off her shoes so that she	could enter the building	
	She wanted	her arrival to be a	
4.	I don't want to ride	Let's ride together.	
5.	Superman is	inemoniase 1	
6.	The Student Union has a	and Found office. If you are	
	lucky, you might find something there that you left in the cafeteria		
	by mistake.		
7.	Two hijacke	d an airplane and made the pilot fly to	
	Paris. The passengers were	It was a	
	experience f	or them.	





Articles

P	ut articles in the blanks if they are necessary.
1	people who have to fly all time for business often
	find it boring.
2.	However, some people feel only terror when they get on
	airplane.
3.	Being afraid of poisonous spiders is logical.
4.	Three common phobias are fear of heights, fear of being
	enclosed in small area, and fear of being in large open area
5.	A plane crash is always in news, but we never hear about
	millions of flights every year that are safe.
6.	People who have a fear of heights avoid high places, and if they are
	in high-rise building, they don't look out windows.
7.	They might also be afraid of being in enclosed place like
	elevator or tunnel on highway.
8.	When they get on airplane, they can't get out until end of
	flight, and flight might last several hours.
200	
TO THE PARTY OF	Connecting Words
1	Connecting Words
	se and, but, or even though to connect a sentence in the second column with a
	ntence in the first column. Use a comma before and or but . Write the sentences on
	separate piece of paper.
1.	Businesspeople are bored a. They didn't have good
2	with flying. equipment. A roadrunner fits well into b. It looks funny.
۷.	its environment. c. Amundsen had arrived
3.	People started exploring the there first.
	ocean floor. d. People who don't fly very often find
4.	The boat was caught in a it exciting.
_	bad storm. e. It sank.
5.	Scott reached the South Pole.





Summarizing

Write a sentence to summarize each of these paragraphs. Number 2 will have a long sentence. For numbers 1 and 3, write a sentence with only the most important idea.

- 1. Paragraph 3 (lines 17–23)
- 2. Paragraphs 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9 (lines 29-50)
- 3. Paragraph 10 (lines 51-55)



Guided Writing

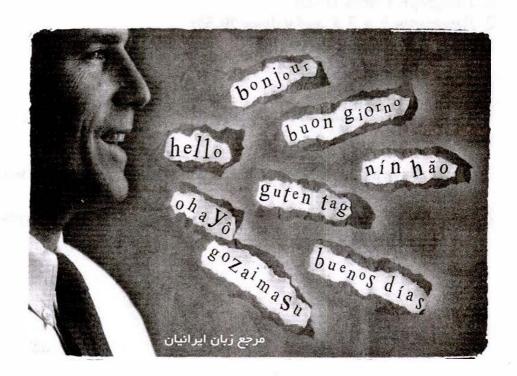
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Do you have a phobia? Describe it. If you wanted to control it, what would you do?
- 2. Describe the most terrifying trip you have ever taken, on an airplane or any other kind of transportation.



lesson 3

Languages and Language Diversity



Before You Read

- 1. What languages do you speak?
- 2. How is your first language different from English?
- 3. How many languages do you think there are in the world?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. All languages have rules for **forming** words and for ordering those words into sentences.
- 2. People invent new words for their language and **borrow** words from other languages.
- 3. Languages are now disappearing at a rapid rate.
- 4. Experts **estimate** that the world loses a language every two weeks.
- 5. In one study, researchers looked at **bilingual** adults. Some of the adults learned a second language when they were children, and some learned a second language as adults.

3 Languages and Language Diversity



A language is a **system** of sounds, gestures, or **characters** used to communicate ideas and feelings. There are roughly 6,000 languages in the world today. Some languages are used by millions of people. Others have only a few speakers.

All languages have rules for **forming** words and for ordering those words into **meaningful** sentences. In written languages, meaning is expressed through a system of characters and rules for combining those characters. In spoken languages, meaning is expressed through a system of sounds and rules for combining those sounds. Many hearing-impaired people use sign languages, in which gestures do the work of the sound system of spoken languages.



Word order is more important in English than it is in some other languages such as Russian. The sound system is very important in Chinese and in many languages spoken in West Africa.

Languages are always changing, but they change
very slowly. People invent new words for their
language, **borrow** words from other languages, and
change the meanings of words as needed. For example,
the English word *byte* was invented by computer **specialists** in 1959. The English word *tomato* was
borrowed from Nahuatl, an American Indian language

spoken in Mexico. The English word *meat* once **referred to** food in general.

There are several major language families in the world. The languages in each family are related, and scientists think that they came from the same parent family. Language families come in different sizes. The Austronesian family contains at least 500 languages, including Pilipino, Malay, and Maori. The Basque language, spoken in northern Spain, is the only member of its language family.

The Indo-European language family contains fifty-five languages, including English. German, Spanish, Russian, and Hindi are also Indo-European languages. Another language family is Sino-Tibetan, which

40 includes Chinese, Burmese, and Tibetan. The Afro-Asiatic family includes Arabic, Hebrew, and Amharic. There are about 150 American Indian languages spoken today. These languages have many differences among them and have been <u>divided</u> into

45 more than fifty language families.

Today, 50% of the world's population speaks one of the top fifteen languages. The world's most common language is Mandarin Chinese, which has more than 1 billion speakers. English is the international language 50 for science and business. In fact, English has more second-language speakers than first-language speakers.

People learn languages by listening, reading, and using the language. Most children learn their first language easily—and sometimes other languages as

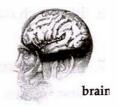
separated



well. Adults often must work harder at learning a second language.

Recent research indicates that a child's brain
actually learns a new language differently than an adult's brain does. In one study, scientists used a special machine to look at the brains of bilingual adults. Some of the adults learned a second language when they were children, and some learned a second language as adults. The study showed that children use the same part of their brain to learn both their first language and a second language. Adults, on the other hand, used a different area of their brain to process the

Languages have come and gone in the **past**, but they are now disappearing at a rapid **rate**. Experts **estimate**70 that, on average, the world loses a language every two weeks. Some **linguists** believe that half of the world's languages could disappear in the next 100 years if we don't do anything. That would be roughly 3,000 languages lost forever. Should we let that happen?



able to speak two languages

judge; calculate

people who study languages

Vocabulary

second language.

	systems	characters	form	meaningful
	borrow	specializes	refer to	divided
	past	rate	estimate	linguists
1.	There are many	different writing		The English
	language uses th	ne Roman alphab	et.	
2.	A dermatologist	is a doctor who		in problems of
	the skin.			the result there are
3.	The United State	es is	into fif	ty states.
4.	In the	fifty	years, the popul	ation of the world has
	increased rapidly	y.		
5.	Can I	your	pen for just a mi	nute?

6	dry snow.	t snow into balls than to use
7	. In some countries, students	their professors by their
8.	. Noam Chomsky, a professor at MIT, is one a	of the most famous
9.	. A team of workers can build a car at a faster	r than
	neonle working alone	OF THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF
10.	The word <i>diversity</i> has nine	
	Vocabulary	
	rate estimate meaningful	
	brain specialist reference	
	past system characters	linguistics
1.	The best way to become	_ is to live in a
	foreign country.	
2.	His friends began to worry about him when	
	longer anything in his	life.
3.	If you want to study how people learn lange	uages, you should take a
	course.	
4.	Motorcyclists wear helmets to prevent	injury in
	an accident.	National States
5.	I don't know the exact population of my city	y, but I
	that there are about 2 million people.	
6.	My dentist said that I need to go to a	to get my
	tooth fixed.	
7.	During the president's speech, she made	to an
	important new medical study.	
8.	The computer for the v	vhole office was down for
0.	two days.	Andre office was down for
9	When you exercise, your heart	goes 110.
	We had such a large class that the instructor	_
20.	up into three groups.	10
	up into tince groups.	
~ ~		





Vocabulary Review: Antonyms

Match the words that mean the opposite. a. negative 1. harmless _____ 2. instructor b. full ____ 3. once in a while c. certainly ____ 4. lift d. often _____ 5. maybe e. student _____ 6. terrify f. request _____ 7. empty g. calm _____ 8. positive h. land _____ 9. demand i. fear ___ 10. take off j. hazardous k. drop True/False/Not Enough Information

 1. We don't know the exact number of languages used today.
 2. Word order is the same in all languages.
 3. There is more than one kind of sign language.
 4. Many hearing-impaired people use a sign language.

- 5. Many food words in English come from other languages.6. A language family can be small or large.
- 7. There is nothing we can do to prevent the loss of half the world's languages.
 - 8. More people speak Chinese than any other language.
 - 9. Fifty percent of the world's population speaks Chinese.
- 10. Adults and children use different parts of their brain to learn a second language.





Comprehension Questions

- 1. What is the definition of a language?
- 2. What is a sign language?
- 3. In English, the basic order of words in a sentence is subject, verb, object. What is the basic order of words in your first language?
- 4. What is an example of a borrowed word?
- 5. What is an example of an invented word?
- 6. What is one difference between the Austronesian language family and the Indo-European language family?
- 7. Why is it useful to group languages into families?
- 8. Should we try to keep languages alive? Why or why not?
- 9. Why is it more difficult for adults than children to learn a second language?



Paraphrasing

Use your own words to say the ideas found in these sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.

- 1. There are about 150 American Indian languages spoken today. These languages have many differences among them and have been divided into more than fifty language families.
- 2. Most children learn their first language easily—and sometimes other languages as well. Adults often must work harder at learning a second language.



Main Idea

- 1. Write a sentence for the main idea for paragraph 4 (lines 19–27).
- 2. Write a sentence for the main idea for paragraph 7 (lines 46–51).





1.	Half of the world's population speaks one of
	languages.
2.	We might lose half of the world's languages in the next
	years.
3.	The word byte entered the English language in the
	year
4.	Maori is a language in the language family.



Word Forms: Active and Passive

In an active sentence, the subject performs (does) the action:

Computer specialists invented the word *byte*.

In a passive sentence, the subject receives the action. The passive is formed with the verb **to be** and the past participle. Sometimes the person (the agent) who performed the action is included in the sentence after the word **by**. The agent is not included if it is unknown or unimportant. Sometimes everyone knows who the agent is, so naming it is not necessary.

The word byte was invented by computer specialists.

About 150 American Indian **languages** are still spoken today. (Everyone knows they are spoken by people.)

American Indian **languages** have been divided into more than fifty language families. (The people who divided the languages into families are not important in this sentence.)



	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	instruct	instruction	instructive instructor	
2.		(dis)honesty	(dis)honest	(dis)honestly
3.	imagine	imagination	(un)imaginative	(un)imaginatively
4.	invent	invention	inventive inventor	inventively
5.	interview	interview interviewer		
6.	characterize	character	(un)characteristic	(un)characteristically
7.		psychology	psychological psychologist	psychologically
8.	beg	beggar		
9.	depend (on)	dependability	(un)dependable	dependably
2.	 The lecture on safe driving was very is an important characteristic for someone working in a bank. 			
3.	3. That mystery program was very I didn't know how it was going to end until the last minute.			
4	-			Graham Bell
	The telephone by Alexander Graham Bell. The Minister of Health didn't like some of the questions that the			
	asked him. He by a			
	foreign journalist.			•
6.	Marge started	a fight with her s	sister. This was very	of
	Marge; she is usually nice to her sister.			
7.	_	-		n she will work with
			problems.	
			iend to lend him his	
	Mr. Thompson is a person. You know that he will do			u know that he will do
	wnat he says. Y	ou can	him.	

j Noun Substitutes

- 1. page 134 line 15 it ______
- 2. page 134 line 19 **they** _____
- 3. page 134 line 30 **they**
- 4. page 135 line 61 they _____
- 5. page 135 line 68 **they**

k

Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

- 1. Some languages are used by millions of _____ people.
- 2. Many hearing-impaired people use sign languages, in which _____ gestures do the work of _____ sound system of _____ spoken languages.
- 3. Word order is more important in _____ English than it is in some other languages such as ____ Russian.
- 4. _____ English word *byte* was invented by _____ computer specialists in 1959.
- 5. _____ food in general.
- 6. Experts estimate that, on average, the world loses _____ language every two weeks.
- 7. Today, 50% of _____ world's population speaks one of ____ top fifteen languages.
- 8. Recent research indicates that _____ child's brain learns ____ new language differently than ____ adult's brain does.



Two-Word Verbs

pick (someone) up = go somewhere (for example, with your car) to
get someone
stand for $=$ be a symbol for (as in $U.S.$ stands for $United States$)
see (someone) off = go with someone to the place from which he or she is going to leave (for example, the airport)
clean up = make clean and orderly (as in clean the house after a party or after some children had a lot of toys out)
help out = help someone to do something
1. U.N United Nations.
2. Tom had a big party. Afterwards, he had to the house
Three of his friends stayed to
3. Ali studied at New York University for five years. When he left, twenty
people went to the airport to
him
4. Let's go to the party together. I'll you
at 9:00.
The first recognition of the property of the contribution of the c

n Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Compare your first language to the English language. How are they similar? How are they different?
- 2. What is easy about learning a second language? What is difficult?



Skyscrapers

lesson

4

www.irLanguage.com



Before You Read

- 1. What is the tallest building in your country? How old is it?
- 2. Why couldn't people build very tall buildings 100 years ago?
- 3. Do you think we should continue building tall buildings? Why or why not?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. One of the tallest buildings in the late nineteenth century was the fourteen-**story** Pulitzer Building.
- 2. Cesar Pelli was the **architect** of the Petronas Towers. He worked on the building for several years.
- 3. A building with windows is more **pleasant** than a building without windows.
- 4. Architects had to find a way to prevent skyscrapers from moving too much in the wind. **In addition**, they wanted to make the buildings as beautiful as possible.
- 5. During World War Two, the **centers** of many cities in Europe were destroyed by bombs.

4 Skyscrapers



In 1998, the Petronas Towers in Malaysia became the tallest building in the world, **stealing** the number one spot from the Sears Tower in Chicago. Four years later, in 2003, the Taipei 101 building in Taiwan stole the **title**5 from the Petronas Towers. It seems that no **skyscraper** can hold the title of "the world's tallest building" for very long. But how high can a skyscraper go? Some experts believe that a mile-high building (5,280 feet, or 1,609 meters) is possible with the technology we

For centuries, the tallest buildings were made of stone. The base, or lower walls, of a tall building had to be very thick in order to support the upper walls. The taller the building was, the thicker the lower walls had to be. One of the tallest buildings in the late nineteenth



century was the fourteen-story Pulitzer Building in floor New York. To support the upper walls of the building, the stone walls at the base were nine feet (three meters) thick!

It took two important technological advancements 20 to make real skyscrapers possible. The first advancement was the mass production of iron and steel. The second was the production of lightweight metal beams. In the 1880s, architects started using these 25 beams to support the walls of buildings. These buildings didn't need thick walls at the base, so they

people who design

There were other advantages to building with metal beams. The building walls were thinner, and they could 30 have more windows, which made the rooms much more pleasant. With thin lower walls, there was more nice room for stores and offices on the ground floor. It was also faster to build with iron and steel than with stone.

could be much taller.

However, there was still one problem. How would 35 people get to the top floor of a tall building? The solution, of course, was the elevator. Elisha Otis invented the safety elevator and first showed it to the **public** in 1853. By the 1880s, there were elevators run by electricity, which were fast and light enough to use in 40 skyscrapers. They were developed at just the right time.

There were other problems that architects and engineers had to solve. They had to figure out a way to get water to all the floors. They had to prevent the buildings from moving too much in the wind.

45 In addition, they wanted to make the buildings as beautiful as possible.

At the same time that architects were **designing** the first high-rise buildings, thousands of immigrants were entering the United States from Europe. These people 50 needed housing, and tall buildings could provide plenty of it in the cities. Before long, skyscrapers were rising in cities across the United States.

Over the years, many problems connected to high-rise buildings were solved, and buildings got taller 55 and taller. In 1909, a fifty-story building was built in

and



New York, and in 1913, one with sixty floors. In 1931, the Empire State Building in New York was finished; it was 102 stories high.

Throughout the twentieth century, other countries

60 were building skyscrapers too. In Europe, the **centers** of many cities had been destroyed by **bombs** during World War Two. City planners rebuilt many of the buildings **exactly** as they had been, but they also included high-rises in their plans. Most European cities today are a

65 mixture of old and modern buildings.

Tokyo did not have tall buildings for a long time because of **earthquakes**. Then engineers figured out how to keep a high-rise standing during an earthquake. Today, there are many tall buildings in Tokyo. In fact, there are tall buildings in cities throughout the world. As the population of a city increases, the number of high-rises increases because they take less **space**.

We have the technology for skyscrapers, but do we really need them or want them? With the invention of computers, a company doesn't need to have all its offices in one huge building. People can communicate by computer from offices spread out all over the city or even from their homes. And do we want 200-story buildings? Do people want to work and live that far above the ground? The architects and engineers who are planning these new skyscrapers have to think about these questions, or they may build buildings that no one will use.

sudden, violent movements of the earth



Vocabulary

skyscraper	advantages	title	advancement
immigrants	designs	stories	beams
stole	pleasant	in addition	architect
Someone	1	ar during the night.	

- 1. Someone ______ his car during the night. When he got up, it was gone.
- 2. There are many ______ to learning a second language.



3	. A high-rise buildin	g is also called	a <u>———</u>	
4	. The Nile River in A	frica holds the	PERMIT	of longest river in
	the world.			
5	. Thousands of		arrive in Austra	alia from Asia and
	Europe every year.			
6	. What was the most	important scien	ntific	in the
	twentieth century?			
7.	In some skyscraper	s, the walls are	made of steel	
	and glass.			
8.	An architect	1	buildings.	
9.	The Taipei 101 build	ding has 101		- Library -
10.	Metal beams are us	ed to build brid	lges	
	to skyscrapers.			
	Vocabulary			
(9,90	mlossant	imamaiamama	homb	am a aa
	pleasant in addition	immigrant architect	bomb story	space earthquake
	advantage	center	exact	public
1.	One	of steel is	s that it is lighter	
	We've had		_	
	and sunny.			
3.	We tried to get twer	nty chairs into t	he room, but the	re wasn't
	enough	•		
4.	An	in Turkey	destroyed severa	al villages.
5.	The sun is at the		of our solar s	ystem.
6.	A famous	des	igned the whole	city of Brasilia.
7.	I don't know the		height of the	Sears Tower, but I
	think it's more than	400 meters tall.		
8.	Another word for a	floor of a build		to the second
9.	The lecture on mode	ern architecture	tonight is open	to the
		Anyone can g	ço.	
10.	There was an explos	sion caused by a	a	



Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match the words with the definitions.

- 1. estimate a. better
- __ 2. interior b. half of the Earth
- _____ 3. border c. get away from
 - ____ 4. delay d. guess; predict
 - ___ 5. blind e. not dangerous
 - ___ 6. harmless f. to the shore
 - ____ 7. escape g. line between two countries
 - O hamisuhana hamatahlata asa
 - 8. hemisphere h. not able to see i. remote
- _____ 10. blizzard j. inside
 - k. accident
 - l. bad winter storm
 - m. cause to be late

Multiple Choice

- 1. The first skyscraper was built in _____
 - a. the late nineteenth century
 - b. 1853
 - c. Tokyo
- 2. It's impossible to build a skyscraper in stone because ____
 - a. the building walls would be too thin
 - b. the lower walls would be too thick
 - c. people couldn't get to the top of the building
- 3. Many European cities _____.
 - a. were destroyed by earthquakes
 - b. have only new buildings
 - c. have both old and new buildings
- 4. A building with steel beams does not need _____
 - a. technology
 - b. thick walls
 - c. stores and offices on the first floor

- 5. The first building with sixty floors was built only ______ years after a fifty-story building.
 - a. 1913
 - b. four
 - c. eighteen
- 6. As population increases, _____ increases.
 - a. immigration
 - b. the number of skyscrapers
 - c. the number of old buildings
- 7. There weren't any skyscrapers in Tokyo for a long time because of _____
 - a. earthquakes
 - b. the population
 - c. immigration



Comprehension Questions

- 1. What technological advancements made skyscrapers possible?
- 2. Why don't buildings with steel beams need thick lower walls?
- 3. Name an advantage of buildings with thin lower walls.
- 4. Why does the text say that elevators were invented at just the right time?
- 5. What effect did the arrival of thousands of immigrants in the United States have on skyscrapers?
- 6. What is the tallest building in the world today?
- 7. What is the advantage of high-rise buildings over lower buildings?
- 8. Why can Japan have skyscrapers today when it couldn't before?
- 9. Do you think people would use 200-story buildings? What is your reason?



Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence gives the main idea in paragraph 3 (lines 20–27)?
- 2. Which sentence gives the main idea in paragraph 6 (lines 41–46)?
- 3. Write a sentence that gives the main idea of paragraph 7 (lines 47–52).
- 4. Write a sentence that gives the main idea of the last paragraph.



g Word Forms

These are some common verb prefixes and suffixes:

en-: encircle, enclose-en: darken, shorten

-ize: industrialize, publicize

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	compare	comparison	comparative	comparatively
2.	please	pleasure	(un)pleasant	(un)pleasantly
3.	add	addition	additional	additionally
4.	advance	advancement	advanced	
5.		(dis)advantage	(dis)advantageous	(dis)advantageously
6.	prevent	prevention	preventive	
7.	immigrate	immigration immigrant	immigration immigrant	
8.	popularize	popularity	popular	popularly
9.	enclose	enclosure	enclosed	
10.	strengthen	strength	strong	strongly

1.	. Spanish spelling is	easy to learn. By	
		English spelling is difficult.	
2.	. It was a	to meet you.	
3.	. People who are afraid to fly don't like being closed in.		
	,1	they sometimes fear heights and don't understand	
	the technology of flyin	g.	
4.	What can you do to _	in your profession?	
5.	It is	to learn English. Are there any	
	to	p learning it?	



6.	Providing medicine is better than helping people
	after they are sick.
7.	The office is open from 9:00 to 5:00.
8.	is very important to teenagers.
9.	The farmer put his sheep in an for the night.
10.	I agree with you
h	Two-Word Verbs: Review
Put	the right word in each blank.
1.	There was a long line waiting to check at the airport.
2.	A large truck broke on the highway.
3.	Alice goes to the gym every weekend to work
4.	Do you have enough money to live?
5.	Could you help me this weekend?
6.	Fixing my car turned an all-day job.
7.	Mr. Brown is working too hard and has to slow
8.	Jean had to drop of school and get a job.
9.	Children don't like to put their toys when they finish playing.
10.	Bob was an hour late because he ran gas.
•	
	Articles
Put	articles in the blanks if they are needed.
1. In	n 1998, Petronas Towers in Malaysia became tallest
	uilding in world.
2. F	or centuries, tallest buildings were made of stone.
3. In	1880s,architects started using these beams to support
_	walls of buildings.
4. E	lisha Otis inventedsafety elevator and first showed it to
p	ublic in 1853.
5. Ir	n 1931,Empire State Building inNew York was finished; it
W	vas 102 stories high.
6. W	/ithinvention of computers, company doesn't
n	eed to have all its offices in one huge building.



Summarizing

Write a sentence to summarize each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 1 (lines 1–10)
- 2. Paragraph 2 (lines 11–19)
- 3. Paragraph 5 (lines 34-40)



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Do you think we should continue to build higher and higher buildings? Why or why not?
- 2. Describe a skyscraper you have seen. Be very specific and give complete details.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com



Left-Handedness

lesson



Before You Read

- 1. How many people in the picture are writing with their left hand?
- 2. Are you left-handed, or is anyone else in your family left-handed?
- 3. What advantages and disadvantages are there to being left-handed?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Do you **prefer** to write with your left hand or your right hand?
- 2. In the past, left-handed people were often **forced** to use their right hand.
- 3. One part of the brain controls how a person uses the five senses—sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch.
- 4. Some left-handed children see letters and words backwards. They read *d* for *b* and *was* for *saw*.
- 5. In the 1930s, some teachers started **permitting** schoolchildren to write with their left hand.

5 Left-Handedness



like better

Do you <u>prefer</u> to write with your left hand? If you do, you are one of the millions of "lefties" in the world. There would be even more left-handed people in the world if many people weren't **forced** to use their right hand.

To understand left-handedness, it is necessary to look at the brain. The brain is divided into two hemispheres. In most right-handers, the left hemisphere is the center of language and logical thinking. This is where they do their math problems and memorize vocabulary. The right hemisphere controls how they understand broad, general ideas and how they respond to the five senses—sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch.

covering many topics

The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the body, and the right hemisphere controls the left side. Both sides of the body receive the same information from the brain because both hemispheres



are connected. However, in right-handed people, the left hemisphere is stronger. In left-handed people, it is 20 the right hemisphere that is stronger.

Different handedness causes differences in people. Although the left hemisphere controls language in most right-handers, 40% of left-handers have the language center in the right hemisphere. The other 60% use the 25 left side of the brain or both sides for language.

Lefties prefer not only the left hand but also the left foot. They prefer using the left foot to kick a ball because their whole body is "left-handed."

There has been an increasing amount of research on 30 handedness. For example, one psychologist says that left-handers are more likely to have good imaginations. They are also more likely than right-handers to enjoy swimming underwater. That is because left-handers can adjust more easily to seeing underwater.

change

Left-handedness can cause problems for people. Some left-handed children see letters and words **backwards.** They read d for b and was for saw. Another problem is <u>stuttering</u>. Some left-handed children start to stutter when they are forced to write with their right 40 hand. Queen Elizabeth II's father, King George VI, had to change from left- to right-handed writing when he was a child, and he stuttered all his life.

repeating words or parts of words

Anthropologists think that the earliest people were about 50% right-handed and 50% left-handed because 45 ancient tools from before 8000 B.C. could be used with either hand. But by 3500 B.C., the tools, which were better designed, were for use with only one hand. More than half of them were for right-handed people.

people who study different cultures

The first writing system, invented by the 50 Phoenicians (3000–2000 B.C.) in the Middle East, went from right to left. The Greeks began to write from left to right around the fifth century B.C. because they increasingly believed that right was "good" and left was "bad." As time passed, more and more customs

> experience difficulties or pain

55 connected left with "bad." This belief is still common in many countries today, and left-handed people suffer herause of it



35

As the centuries passed and **education** spread to more levels of society, more and more people became literate. As more children learned to write, more of them were forced to write with their right hand. In the 1930s, some teachers finally started **permitting** schoolchildren to write with their left hand. In some countries, however, left-handed children are still forced to write with their right hand.

Many famous people were left-handed. Napoleon, Michelangelo, Beethoven, Isaac Newton, and Albert Einstein were all left-handed. Alexander the Great and Queen Victoria of England were left-handed too. Paul McCartney of the Beatles plays the guitar the **opposite** way from other guitarists because he is left-handed.

Are you left-handed even though you write with your right hand? Take this test to find out. Draw a circle first with one hand and then with the other. If you draw the circles clockwise (the direction the hands of a clock go in), you are probably left-handed. If you draw them counterclockwise (in the other direction), you are right-handed. The test does not always work, and some people draw one circle in one direction and the other circle in the other direction. But don't worry if you are left-handed. You are in good company.

with a lot of other good people

a Vocabulary

	necessary senses	broader responding	backwards force	stutter prefer
	memorize	tool	adjust	likely
1.	The main stree	ets of a city are _		than the side streets.
	Broadway is a	common street r	name.	
2.	A left-handed	person who is fo	rced to write wi	th the right hand may
	begin to			
3.	A car can go fo	orward and		



4.	. Did you	any poems when you were a child?	
5.	. Do you	to have coffee or tea in the morning?	
6.	A blind person is lacking on	of the	
7.	Some students are shy about	to questions in	class.
8.	As you drive off the highwa	, you need to	
	your speed.		
9.	Many businesspeople agree	hat it's to know	
	English today.		
10.	There are no clouds in the sk	y today, so it's not	44.3
	to rain.		
10-4M			
	Vocabulary		
G. W.		ms transported	
	suffering tools broad respond	force anthropolo counterclos	
	broad respond education opposite	clockwise company	LKWISE
1.	A mechanic cannot fix a car v		
		, where should you	90
	to school?	and the second supposed as	9
3.		a direction.	
		their children to swim in t	he pool
	without an adult there.		1
5.	We had lots of	this weekend. My relatives and	d my
	wife's relatives all came over	are of the Spanishers The Asim S	
6.	If you turn to the left, you are	turning in a dir	ection.
	The of <i>r</i>		
8.	A person who studies ancien		
9.	He tried to	the door open, but it wouldn't mo	ve.
10.	During a war, there is a treme	ndous amount of	F#1



Vocabulary Review

	sticks out	borrow	mates	nests
	once in a while	specialist	exactly	crash
	fear .	tunnel	loss	terrified
1.	Do you know	h	now tall you are?	
2.	In spring, animals sea	rch for	The builties siles in all	
3.	Spiders and birds buil	ld	·	
4.	A roadrunner's head	Park Library	straight in fro	ont when it runs.
5.	The Simplon	go	es under the Alps b	oetween Italy
	and Switzerland.			
6.	Being afraid to fly is a	n illogical	-	
7.	We heard a loud		and knew that the	ere had been
	an accident.			
8.	You can	my boo	oks, but please don'	t forget to
	return them.			
9.	Would you be	t	o meet Frankensteir	1 ?
10.	Most people fly only			
	9590			
C	True/False/Not En	ough Informa	ation	
	1. Some Eskimos a	are left handed	tral for	
				madeline e i
-	2. Most right-hand	iers do calculu	s with the left nemi	spnere or
	the brain.	1 1	11. 111	ground state of
	3. When people lo		ul building, most of	tnem use the
	right hemispher		la Tearne, en liga-	90.200-mil.2 - A
	4. The right hemis	The state of the s		and the second second
			he left hemisphere	
			ldren to see letters b	oackwards.
	7. It is easier to wr		9	
	8. Left-handed ped	ople are more i	ntelligent than right	t-handers.





Comprehension Questions

- 1. What does the right hemisphere of the brain control?
- 2. Which hemisphere is stronger in left-handed people?
- 3. Why do lefties prefer to kick with the left foot?
- 4. What problems do lefties have in using machines?
- 5. When do some left-handers start to stutter?
- 6. Why do anthropologists think that the earliest people were equally divided between left- and right-handers?
- 7. Why did the Greeks start writing from left to right?
- 8. What does "You are in good company" mean?
- 9. How can you tell if a 2-year-old child is left-handed?
- 10. Are you left-handed?



Main Idea

- 1. What sentence is the main idea for paragraph 4 (lines 21–25)?
- 2. What sentence is the main idea for paragraph 6 (lines 29–34)?
- 3. Write a sentence for the main idea in paragraph 9 (lines 49–57).
- 4. Write the main idea of the last paragraph.



Word Forms

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	communicate	communication(s)	(un)communicative	
2.	exist	existence	(non)existent	
3.	prefer	preference	(un)preferential	(un)preferentially
4.	divide	division	(in)divisible	
5.	force	force	forceful	forcefully
6.			(un)common	(un)commonly
7.	respond	response	(un)responsive	
8.	permit	permission permit	(im)permissible	(im)permissibly
9.		reality	(un)real	really



Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

1. I tried to get the information from the president's secretary, but he was

	ed to get the informa	Commence and the state of	ident's secretary, but h	ie was
2. Fran	k told everyone tha		arge company, but the	company
	×			
3. Profe	essors should not gi	ve	treatment to the	students
they			entre de la lacementa de la constantina de la constantina de la constantina de la constantina de la constantin	
4. Ten i	s not evenly	by 3	and the second are be	
5. John	was	to leave the	university because his	s grades
were	so bad.			1001
6. It is _		believed that girls	learn languages faster	than boys.
7. The i	njured person	to	the doctor's treatmen	t. She is
well	now.			
8. You	cannot build a house	e in this city withou	ut a building	
			dealer of other sple	
9. It see	emed	to Abdullah	that he had finally fir	nished his
	orate degree and wa			
12.50	Ü			
	Missing Words			
	711351118 110143			
Fill in th	e missing words.			
l	unc	lerstand left-hande	edness, it is necessary	
	loo	κ	the brain.	
			two	
hemi	spheres.			

3.	Both sides of	body recei	ve the same information
	,	the brain because both h	nemispheres
		connected.	
4.	There has been	increasir	ng amount
		research	handedness.
5.	But	3500 B.C., the tools,	which
	better designed, w	vere for use	only one hand.
6.		the centuries passed and	l education spread
		more levels	society, more and
		people became	ad adapt out in a regulational
	Connecting V	Vords	
_			
		<mark>n, since,</mark> or <mark>until</mark> in the blank	
1.	I'll give you the bo	ookI s	ee you tomorrow.
2.	People who are afr	aid of flying can control the	eir fear
	they take a class.		
3.	The Garbage Proje	ct has been in existence	
4.	Toronto knew that	it had done a good job recyc	cling the
	Garbage Project pro	oved that the amount of its g	garbage had become smaller.
5.	Sometimes	the roadrunn	er gets a piece of meat, it
	takes it back to its		
6.	There were no skys	scrapers	1884.
7.		Burke started across Aus	tralia, he organized
	the expedition.		
3.		_ the 1930s, teachers forced	d all children to write with
	their right hand.		
	Ü		





Finding the Reason

Write the reason for each statement.

1. Many left-handers have to use their right hand.

2. For some people, the center of language is in the right hemisphere.

3. Both sides of the body receive the same information.

4. Lefties prefer kicking with the left foot.

5. King George VI stuttered.

6. Anthropologists think that more than 50% of people were right-handed by 3500 B.C.

7. Paul McCartney plays the guitar differently.



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Write a short history of left-handedness. Start with the earliest people and continue until today.
- 2. Your 3-year-old child is left-handed. Your friend thinks that you should teach the child to use the right hand instead. What are you going to do and why?



Video Highlights

a Before You Watch

- 1. How much do you remember about skyscrapers? Work with a partner to recall the following information from Lesson 4.
 - a. The building material that made tall buildings possible:
 - b. Two problems that architects and engineers had to solve:
- 2. Read these comments from the video "Green Skyscraper":

"Lights, tourists, traffic. Times Square is not where you would expect to find an environmental experiment in progress."

"But, slowly rising is a forty-eight-story building designed to save energy and other natural resources."

Then discuss the questions below with your partner.

- a. What do you know about New York? List three facts.
- b. Why do you think this new building is called a "green skyscraper"?

b As You Watch

Listen for information that will help you complete this list:

Ways the Green Skyscraper Will Save Energy

- 1. It will use solar panels to generate clean ______.
- 2. Extra insulation will be used to keep heat (or cool air)
- 3. Oversized _____ will let in light, but not too much heat.





After You Watch

1. Check the facts. Is the underlined information in the following sentences correct? If not, change the sentence to make it correct. Write your correction above the mistake. If the information is already correct, do not change the sentence.

40%

Example: It's going to cut energy use by 80% over a conventional building.

- a. The builder, architects, and suppliers communicate via <u>airmail</u> and the Internet.
- b. We believe we've eliminated about 40,000 sheets of paper.
- c. The building was designed to cut down on the use of <u>glass</u> and other energy-intensive building materials.
- d. Keeping buildings running takes up about <u>one half</u> of the energy used in America each year.
- 2. Why is the statement below important? Discuss it with a partner. Share your explanation with the class.

"The building is going to cut energy use by 40% over a conventional building That's significant, particularly in a building this big. That's a lot of carbon dioxide (CO_2) that won't be going into the atmosphere."



Activity Page

Familiar Phrases

A phrase is a group of words that has a special meaning. Use this key to figure out the familiar phrases.

A	В	C	D	E	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	Т	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
Z	Y	X	W	V	U	T	S	R	Q	P	O	N	M	L	K	J	Ι	Η	G	F	E	D	C	В	A

Write the phrase on the top line, and then use it in a sentence of your own on the bottom line.

					R I			ΓL	L	W	X	K	N I	ΚZ	M	В	
	in	go	od	cor	пра	ny								8 1			
	If.	you	ı lik	e t	0 SK	vim	, you	are	e in	good	com	pan	y wit	h fie	5h.		
1.	G	Z	K		В	L	FΙ		U	LL	G						
										19		T		7			
2.	Z		S	R	T	S-	I R	Н	V	Y	F R	0	W	R I	ΜI	Γ	
											71177						
3.	L	M	X	V		R	M		Z		SR	OV	J				

Dictionary Page

Understanding Grammar Codes

1. You can use your dictionary to learn about regular verbs.

Ending	Form	Example
-ed	simple past	They designed the building to save energy.
-ed	past participle	The building was designed to save energy.
-ing	present participle	The architects are designing a new building.
-s	third person singular	He designs buildings for a living.

Your dictionary also gives you the forms of all irregular verbs. Look at this entry for the verb *swim*. Label each of its main forms.

swim /swim/ v. wam /swæm/, swum /swam/, swimming, swims 1 [I] to move through water by moving parts of the body (legs, arms, fins, tails): He swam across the river and back again.

past simple

2. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Use your dictionary to check for the correct spelling.

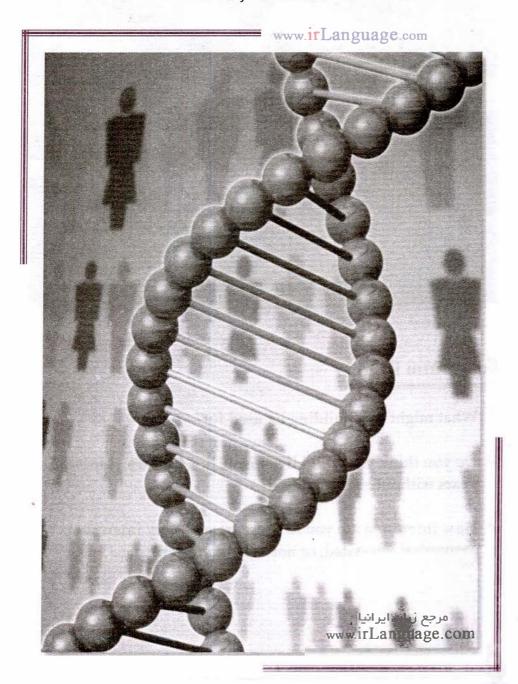
Example: The audience (clap) <u>clapped</u> their hands and stamped their feet.

- a. The Taipei 101 building (steal) ______ the title of "tallest building in the world."
- b. I (lose) _____ my wallet somewhere.
- c. Many left-handers (excel) ______ in tennis, baseball, and swimming.



Science Unit

Minds are like parachutes. They only function when they are open.
—Sir James Dewar



Biospheres in Space

lesson



Before You Read

- 1. What might this building be used for?
- 2. Do you think you could live inside this building for two years without ever leaving it?
- 3. How interested are you in space travel—very interested, somewhat interested, or not very interested?



Context Clues



The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Will it ever be possible for people to live on faraway **planets** such as Mars and Jupiter?
- 2. Scientists at the Environmental Research Laboratory are doing experiments on the Earth's environment.
- 3. A biosphere will need **bacteria** or something else to take care of the wastes.
- 4. **So far,** only a few experimental biospheres have been built on Earth.

Biospheres in Space



Will it ever be possible for people to live on faraway planets such as Mars? In the past, colonies in space were possible only in science fiction stories. Today, however, we are experimenting with ways to build real space colonies. Many scientists actually consider it possible that people will live far from the Earth sometime in the future.



The Environmental Research Laboratory at the University of Arizona is one place that designs biospheres (*bio* means *life*, and a *sphere* is a *circle*, like a ball) which could be used to live on other planets. Biospheres are complete, enclosed environments where people can be born, live their whole lives, and die without returning to the Earth. To be successful, a biosphere has to have a perfect **balance** among

everything within it—the plants, the animals (including humans), and the chemical **elements**. Specialists and experts from many different fields are needed to work on these **complex projects**.

complicated



making

Building a greenhouse for growing plants in winter 20 is the first step in <u>creating</u> a biosphere. A greenhouse is a closed environment except for the sun's heat entering through the glass or plastic. Of course, there is a water system from outside, and people bring in nutrients for the plants and take out the waste material.

25 A biosphere in space will have to have its own system to provide water that can be used and reused. It will need bacteria or something else to take care of the wastes. Everything must be perfectly balanced, or else the whole system will break down.

The Earth itself is the best example of a real biosphere. Nothing important enters except sunlight, and nothing leaves as waste except some heat. Everything in the Earth's environment needs to be in balance. If we destroy that balance, the system will 35 break down.

There are several reasons for building biospheres. One reason is to help out when there is an energy shortage. Dr. Gerard K. O'Neill, a famous physicist from Princeton University, has said that in the future we 40 will have <u>satellites</u> in space to produce <u>solar</u> energy and send it to the Earth. It will be too expensive to continually send people and materials to the satellites, so biospheres will be necessary. He thinks that 10,000 people could live in a space colony sometime in the 45 future. There is another interesting reason to build biospheres. We can use them to do all kinds of research about our own environment and how it works. By studying biospheres, we can understand better what will happen as humans destroy tropical forests, as they

pollute the oceans and the air. So far, only a few experimental biospheres have been built on Earth. One is in Oracle, Arizona, near the University of Arizona. In 1991, four men and four 55 women tried to live inside the biosphere without getting anything from outside. During the experiment, things got out of balance. Oxygen and carbon dioxide levels fell, and the crew had to get help and supplies

50 create more carbon dioxide by burning fuel, and as they



of the sun

until now

30

from outside. In space, people living in a biosphere would not be able to do this.

Learning how a biosphere works is one of the most important things we can do. The information we get from biospheres may **keep** us **from** destroying our own environment. This information will also help us to travel where once only science fiction could go.

2	Vocabulary_	
	colony planet solar satellite physicist bacteria	project science fiction complex balance consider carbon dioxide
1.	The Earth is a	It is part of the
	system.	
2.	can cause	e disease. They also destroy wastes.
3.	Ants live together in a	
	Julia likes to read	
5.	It's difficult to	a book on your head while you
	are walking.	
6.	O	is to build a dam to store
	water for agriculture.	
7.	Another word for <i>complicated</i> is	5
		the advantages and the disadvantages
	before we start the project.	0

b Vocabulary

	create	satellite	ba	cteria	carbon dioxide
	so far	keep	lab	oratory	elements
	balance	project	ph	ysicist	consider
1.	CO ₂ stands for			e e	
2.	Gold (Au), oxy	gen (O), and ı	ıranium	(U) are all _	
3.	Destroying rain	n forests can _		p	roblems for the
	whole world.				
4.	Scientists in a		0	ften wear wh	ite coats.
5.	•	, there a	re no bu	ildings over 1	20 stories high.
6.	A	teach	es or do	es research in	physics.
7.	Before the large	e increase in pe	opulatio	on, there was a	a
	between the ne	eds of the peo	ple and	what the land	d could produce.
8.	Much internation	onal communi	ication i	s now done b	у
9.	Designing a spa	ace colony wo	uld be a	difficult	
10.	They locked the	e door to		peop	le from coming in.
11.	I	you to	be a go	od friend.	
(eneses)	1				
	Vocabulary	Review			
1200-140		, conse			
	diet	tools		clockwise	story
	takes off	dispose of		harmful	phobia
	straighten	•		permission	
1.	You need to tur	n the door kno	ob		_ in order to open
	the door.				
				•	e
	It's not healthy				
	If they				rive a lot faster.
5.	Smoking is		to y	our health.	
6.	His office is on t	the twenty-six	th floor	of a	
	forty		_		
7.	What	do	you ne	ed to build a l	nouse?

8.	You need to get special	to go inside the laboratory.
9.	How would people in a space colony -	their garbage?
10.	Only three people	in the theater to see the whole
	movie. Everyone else left early.	
	,	
d	Multiple Choice	
	Widtiple Choice	
1.]	Fiction is	
	a. true	
	b. imaginative	
	c. boring	
	Biospheres are complicated projects beca	
	a. everything must be perfectly balanceb. scientists don't know what materials	
	c. people from different professions wo	
	The experimental biosphere in Arizona.	
	a. was very successful	
	o. had serious problems	
	c. stayed in perfect balance	
4. I	Biospheres in space could support	_ people.
	a. two or three	-
ŀ	o. ten	
(2. 10,000	
	A greenhouse	
	a. is a partly enclosed environment	
	o. is a biosphere	
	s. supports plant life independently	11
	might take care of the wastes in a a. A water system	a biosphere.
	o. Balanced nutrients	
	Bacteria	
7. I	Or. O'Neill thinks that	
	. satellites can produce solar energy	
	o. about ten people could take care of a s	satellite
	. we need a space colony to study the s	



Comprehension Questions

- 1. Why is it a complex project to create a biosphere?
- 2. How is a greenhouse different from a biosphere?
- 3. Explain why the Earth is a biosphere.
- 4. How does Dr. O'Neill think that we will solve the energy shortage?
- 5. Why can we learn about our environment from a biosphere?
- 6. What happened when people moved into the Arizona biosphere?
- 7. Would you like to live in a biosphere on Mars? Why or why not?



Main Idea

- 1. What is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 30–35)?
- 2. What is the main idea of paragraph 5 (lines 36–51)?
- 3. Write a sentence that gives the main idea for paragraph 6 (lines 52–60).



Cause and Effect

What is the cause of each of these effects?

Cause	Effect
1.	People can live their whole lives in biospheres.
2.	The whole system might break down.
3.	The same water must be used and reused.
4.	We will need solar energy.
5.	A biosphere will be necessary to run solar energy production.
6.	We create more carbon dioxide.





Word Forms: Verbs and Nouns

Many English words are used as both a verb and a noun. Use ten of these examples in sentences, using some verbs and some nouns.

Verb	Noun
balance	balance
crash	crash
force	force
design	design
escape	escape
party	party
fear	fear
harm	harm
bother	bother
whistle	whistle
knock	knock



Noun Substitutes

What do these noun substitutes stand for?

- 1. page 170 line 26 it ______
- 2. page 170 line 41 it ______
- 3. page 170 line 46 **them** _____
- 4. page 170 line 47 it _____
- 5. page 170 line 53 **one** _____



Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

- 1. _____ Environmental Research Laboratory at _____ University of Arizona is one place that designs _____ biospheres.
- 2. _____ greenhouse is _____ closed environment except for _____ sun's heat entering through the glass.
- 3. _____ Earth itself is _____ best example of ____ real biosphere.



4.	Everything in Earth's environment needs to be in ba	lance
5.	So far, only few experimental biospheres have been built on	
	Earth.	
6.	Oxygen levels fell, and crew had to get help and	
	supplies from outside.	
7.	Learning how biosphere works is one of most impor	tant
	things we can do.	

k Gu

Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Should we build biospheres? Why or why not?
- 2. You are living in a biosphere on Mars. Describe your life.

Earthquakes

lesson

2



Before You Read

- 1. What happened in this picture?
- 2. Have you ever felt an earthquake?
- 3. What should you do if you feel an earthquake?

Context Clues



The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. A large movement causes a violent earthquake, but a small movement causes a mild one.
- 2. When the ocean waves hit land, they **flood** coastal areas.
- 3. During the earthquake, bridges fell and cars were **crushed**.
- 4. Estimates of deaths ranged from 250,000 to 695,000.
- 5. **Seismology** is the study of earthquakes.

Earthquakes



What causes earthquakes? The outer <u>layer</u> of the Earth is divided into huge pieces that are constantly moving. When two of the pieces move against each other or move in opposite directions, an earthquake 5 happens. A large movement causes a violent earthquake, and a small movement causes a mild one. There are thousands of earthquakes every year, but most of them are very small.



The place where an earthquake begins is called the 10 **epicenter.** When an earthquake happens, <u>vibrations</u> move outward from the epicenter. These rolling vibrations are called **seismic** waves. Usually, an earthquake is only strong enough to cause damage near its epicenter.

shaking movements

When the epicenter of an earthquake is at the bottom of the ocean, it can create huge sea waves as tall as fifteen meters. These waves cross the ocean in several hours. Rushing toward land, they destroy small islands and ships in their path. When they hit land, they **flood** coastal areas far from the epicenter of the earthquake. In 20 1868, a wave reached 4.5 kilometers inland in Peru.

cover with water

After an earthquake happens, people can die from lack of food, water, and medical supplies. The amount



of destruction caused by an earthquake depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is. It also depends on the types of buildings in the area, the soil conditions, and the size of the population. Of the thousands of earthquakes in the world each year, only about 1 in 500 causes damage.

In 1556, an earthquake in northern China killed 830,000 people—the most in history. At that time, there was no way to measure its strength. In 1935, scientists started using the Richter Scale to measure seismic waves. A seriously destructive earthquake measures 6.5 or higher on the Richter Scale.

How can scientists predict earthquakes?
Earthquakes are not just **scattered** anywhere on the surface of the Earth; they happen in areas where pieces of the Earth's surface meet. For example, earthquakes often occur on the west coasts of North and South

40 America, around the Mediterranean Sea, and along the Pacific coast of Asia.

One way to predict earthquakes is to look for changes in the Earth's surface, like a sudden drop in the water level in the ground. Some people say that animals can predict earthquakes. Before earthquakes, people have seen chickens sitting in trees, fish jumping out of the water, snakes leaving their holes, and other animals acting strangely.

On February 4, 1975, scientists predicted an
earthquake in northeastern China and told people in the
earthquake zone to leave the cities. More than a million
people moved into the surrounding countryside, into
safe, open fields away from buildings. That afternoon,
the ground rolled and shook beneath the people's feet.

In seconds, 90% of the buildings in the city of Haicheng.

In seconds, 90% of the buildings in the city of Haicheng were destroyed. The decision to tell the people to leave the cities saved 10,000 lives.

However, more than a year later, on July 28, 1976, the scientists were not so lucky. East of Beijing, Chinese scientists were discussing a possible earthquake. During their meeting, the worst earthquake in modern times hit. Estimates of deaths **ranged** from 250,000 to 695,000.



35

The earthquake measured 7.9 on the Richter Scale.

In late 1984, strong earthquakes began shaking the
Nevado del Ruiz <u>volcano</u> in Colombia. On November
14, 1985, the volcano finally <u>erupted</u>. A nearby river
became a sea of mud that buried four towns, and more
than 2,100 people were killed. This combination of an
earthquake and a volcanic eruption was not a <u>unique</u>
veent. In fact, it's not unusual for earthquakes and
volcanic eruptions to happen at the same time.

one of a kind

Mexico City has frequent earthquakes. An earthquake there on September 19, 1985, measured 8.1 on the Richter Scale and killed 7,000 people. Most victims died when buildings fell on them.

San Francisco, California, also has frequent earthquakes. However, newer buildings there are built to be safe in earthquakes. When an earthquake measuring 7.1 on the Richter Scale hit northern

80 California on October 17, 1989, only 67 people were killed. The earthquake hit in the afternoon, when thousands of people were driving home from work. Freeways and bridges broke and fell. Buried under the layers of the Oakland Freeway, people were crushed in

85 their flattened cars. Explosions sounded like **thunder** as older buildings seemed to **burst** apart along with the freeways. As electric power lines were broken by the falling bridges and buildings, the sky, covered with huge clouds of black dust, appeared to be filled with

90 <u>lightning</u>. Water from broken pipes rushed into the streets and mixed with gas from broken gas lines, causing more explosions.

Emergency workers had to **cope** with medical problems. Everyone worked together to save survivors and comfort victims. The next day, the disaster sites looked terrible. Victims couldn't find their houses, their cars, or even their streets. Boats were destroyed, and <u>debris</u> covered the surface of the sea. There was no water, no electricity, no telephone service, only the smell of garbage **floating** in **melted** ice in refrigerators open to the sun. Losses and **property** damage from the earthquake amounted to millions of dollars.



volcano



lightning

rash

Seismology is the study of earthquakes, and a seismologist is a scientist who observes earthquakes.

Seismologists have given us valuable knowledge about earthquakes. Their equipment measures the smallest vibrations on the surface of the Earth. They are trying to find ways to use knowledge about earthquakes to save lives and to help solve the world's energy shortage. The Earth's natural activity underground creates energy in the form of heat. Geothermal means earth heat.

If seismologists could predict earthquakes, we could save about 20,000 human lives each year.

Humans can control many things about nature, but they cannot control earthquakes.

a Vocabulary

	volcanoes	rolled	floods	unique
	vibrate	thunder	erupted	crush
	victim	lightning	bursts	melts
	float	layer	geothermal	mild
1.	When snow _		_ in the mountains, i	it can cause
		in the lowl	ands.	
2.	Earthquakes ca	an happen before	the eruption of	
3.	-	energy con	nes from heat under	the Earth.
4.	Mount St. Hele	ens, a volcano in V	Washington State in t	he United States,
	_	in 1980.		
5.	When Peter set	his pencil down,	it	off onto the floor.
6.	A blowout hap	pens when a tire .		while a car is moving
7.	The weather ha	as been	this week	c. Even though it is
	winter, it hasn'	t been very cold.		_
8.	They built their	r house themselve	es, so it's truly	x
9.	There are both	heat and activity	below the outer	
×	of the Earth.			
10.	A storm with b	oth	and	is
	sometimes calle	ed an electrical sto	orm.	

(9)

Vocabulary_

	layer	scattered	floating	roll		
	observe	debris	ranges	seismology		
	victim	cope	crushed	thunder		
	vibration	epicenter	property	unique		
1.	After the huge	e wave sank the ship	o, all you could see	was some		
		44 A TRONGE	on the surf	face of the sea.		
2.	The wind	m	y papers all over the	e room.		
3.	In a rain fores	t, the lower	of plan	nt growth is		
	protected by t	he upper one.				
4.	Students who	plan to become tead	chers usually have to	0		
	X	classes as a f	irst step toward tea	ching.		
5.	The freeway b	ridge fell down bec	ause it was near the			
		of the earthq	uake. Its weight			
	many cars.					
6.	When we stand near a busy freeway, we can feel the					
	of the traffic u	nder our feet.				
7.	The yearly pay	y of an engineer	fr	om \$17,000		
	to \$75,000.					
8.	Mr. Dahood us	sed to be a rich man	, but he was a	of		
	the earthquak	e and lost all of his _	E T LOVERE			
9.	Sometimes when people have serious problems, they cannot					
		with them.				
10.		has helped u	s find possible earth	nquake sites.		





Vocabulary Review

Write the correct synonym and antonym for each word in the chart.

Synonyms			- do
answer	small	dangerous	pick up
complicated	make	take away	balance
consider	allow	until now	wide
Antonyms			
uncomplicated	give	forbid	safe
ignore	drop	not yet	actual
narrow	unit	destroy	huge

	Synonyms	Antonyms
1. lift	pick up	drop
2. complex		Lync, W. are shoot by a
3. so far		
4. create	, 1.7986 , 0	man nesephpen
5. respond		
6. steal		
7. broad		1 100 (111
8. hazardous	and the second	
9. tiny		100000000000000000000000000000000000000
10. permit	JA - 74 (A)	

d	Tr	ue	/False/Not Enough Information
		1.	Today, scientists know something about the causes of earthquakes.
	_	2.	Most earthquakes cause a lot of property damage.
	_	3.	More than half of the world's earthquakes are too small to cause
			serious damage.
	_	4.	More people are killed by huge sea waves than by
			falling buildings.
			18

 5.	Seismologists can measure the size of seismic waves.
 6.	Removing water from the ground causes earthquakes.
 7.	Most of the world's earthquakes are mild.
 8.	An earthquake in 1989 destroyed the city of Oakland.
 9.	People can predict earthquakes by studying the weather.
 10.	Thermal means heat.



Comprehension Questions

- 1. How does movement in the Earth cause earthquakes?
- 2. What is the epicenter of an earthquake? What is a seismic wave?
- 3. Why does most of the damage from an earthquake happen near the epicenter?
- 4. Why are earthquakes dangerous when they happen in the middle of the ocean?
- 5. What can you look for to predict an earthquake?
- 6. What was lucky about the earthquake that happened in northeastern China in 1975?
- 7. How can people protect themselves and their property from earthquakes?
- 8. Why do people continue to live where there are earthquakes?



Paraphrasing

Use your own words to combine the ideas in these two sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.

Usually, an earthquake is strong enough to cause damage only near its epicenter.

The amount of destruction caused by an earthquake depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is.



Main Idea

Write or copy a sentence that is the main idea for these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 3 (lines 14-20)
- 2. Paragraph 8 (lines 49-57)
- 3. Paragraph 10 (lines 64–71)







Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	respond	response	responsive	responsively
2.	consider	consideration	(in)considerate	(in)considerately
3.	and the same	complexity	complex	Constant Contract
4.	educate	education	educational	Electrical Electrical
5.	create	creation creativity	(un)creative	creatively
6.	value	value	valuable	
7.	observe	observation observatory	(un)observant	
8.	specialize	specialist	special	
9.	explain	explanation	(un)explainable	
10.	believe	belief	(un)believable	(un)believably

1.	The police immediately to our call for help.	
2.	Marge is a very person. She thinks of others and	
	what they want, instead of thinking of herself most of the time.	
3.	The of modern society affects family life.	
4.	There are a few programs on TV.	
5.	Pablo Picasso was a very artist. He was known for	
	his	
6.	Most people want to have friends. They the	
	friendship of people they like.	
7.	After the director of the English program classes,	
	she writes up her	
8.	She wants to be a doctor who in childhood disease	30

9. Can scientists give a clear	of what actually happens
deep in the Earth? No, some of the details are	so far.
10. Scientists consider it that	gods create
volcanic eruptions.	
i Scanning_	
Scan the text to find this information. Write a short and line where you found the information.	swer and the number of the
1. In 1975, what percentage of the buildings in the destroyed?	city of Haicheng were
2. What did the Mexico City earthquake measure	on the Richter Scale?
3. What time of day did the earthquake hit northe	rn California in October
4. What is the largest number of people killed in a	n earthquake?
Two-Word Verbs	
Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks a correct verb form. Numbers 2 and 3 use the same expres	
mix up = mistake one thing for another dress up = put on special clothes have on = be wearing look out = be careful spread out = spread over a certain area or time	
1. Don't try to learn forty irregular verbs in one da	у
them over a week or two.	-
2. People usually for a party.	Children like to
in their parents' old clothe	s and pretend that they
are adults.	



3.	She her homework assignments and gave the reading
	homework to the wrong teacher. Then she found out that she had done
	the wrong page. She was
4.	! There's a child in the street!
5.	Mike his running clothes because he was going
	to exercise.
	the second and published and p
	Sequencing
	at these sentences about the October 17, 1989, earthquake in the right order. umber 1 is done for you.
_	a. Freeways and bridges broke and fell.
	b. As electric power lines broke, the dark sky seemed to be full of lightning.
	1 c. People were driving home in their cars in the afternoon after work.
_	d. Buildings exploded and pipes broke.
_	e. Water and gas from broken lines mixed and exploded.
	f. The Earth began to shake and roll.
_	g. People died in their cars when freeways and bridges fell on top of them.
_	h. Huge clouds of black dust began to cover the sky.
_	i. Victims could find nothing when they came back.
	j. Emergency workers hurried to find survivors and save victims.
Sign of the second	Summarizing
Su	mmarize paragraph 9, lines 58–63. Use your own words to tell the

main idea.





m Guided Writing

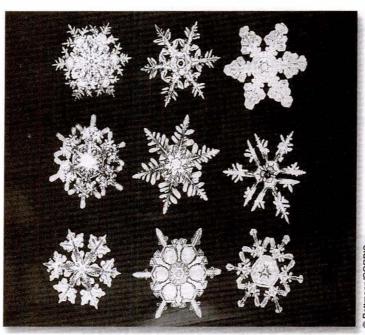
Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are in a city when an earthquake hits. Describe what happens. Tell what you feel, see, hear, and smell.
- 2. You are a seismologist. Tell what scientific information you know about earthquakes. Include how and where they happen and what you are studying right now.



Snow and Hail

lesson



Before You Read

- 1. What is the difference between snow and hail?
- 2. What problems can snow and hail cause?
- 3. Do you like to look at snow? Do you like to be outside in it?

Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. This happens in the **atmosphere**, ten kilometers above the Earth.
- 2. This sounds simple, but it is actually very complex.
- 3. Hail is a small round ball of **alternating** layers of snow and clear ice.
- 4. All snowflakes are six-sided, but no one understands why this is so.

3 Snow and Hail



Millions of people in the world have never seen snow. Others see more of it than they want to. Hail is much more common; it <u>occurs</u> even in deserts.

happens

Each tiny piece of snow is called a snowflake, and each flake has six sides or six points. Billions of snowflakes fall every winter, and the <u>astonishing</u> fact is that each one is different. A snowflake is as individual as someone's handwriting or <u>fingerprint</u>.

amazing

A snowflake forms inside a winter storm cloud
when a microscopic piece of dust is trapped inside a
tiny drop of water. This happens in the atmosphere, ten
kilometers above the Earth. The water freezes around
the dust, and as this flake is blown by the wind, it
collects more drops of water. These drops freeze too,
and the snowflake becomes heavy enough to fall to the

not able to escape air around the Earth

and the snowflake becomes heavy enough to fall to the Earth. As it falls, it passes through areas where the temperature and humidity vary. It collects more and more tiny drops of water, and the shape continually changes. Some drops fall off and start to form

fingerprint

20 new snowflakes.



This sounds **simple**, but it is actually very complex. It is so complex that **mathematicians** using computers are just beginning to understand what happens. Every change in temperature and humidity in the air around the snowflake causes a change in the speed and **pattern** of the snowflake's formation as it makes its trip to the Earth. Since no two flakes follow exactly the same path to the ground, no two snowflakes are exactly alike. However, they are all six-sided. So far, no one understands why this is **so**.

true

Hail is a small round ball of **alternating** layers of snow and clear ice. It forms inside thunderclouds. There are two theories about how hailstones form.

One theory says that hail forms when drops of water freeze in the upper air. As they fall, they collect more drops of water, just as snowflakes do. They also collect snow. The ice and snow build up in layers. If you cut a hailstone, you can see these alternating layers.

The other theory says that hail starts as a raindrop.

The wind carries it higher into the atmosphere, where it gets covered by snow. It becomes heavy and begins to fall. As it falls, it gets a new layer of water, which freezes. Then the wind carries it back up to the snow region, and it gets another layer of snow. This can

happen multiple times. Finally, the hailstone is too heavy to travel on the wind, and it falls to the ground.

Only thunderstorms can produce hail, but very few of them do. Perhaps only one in 400 thunderstorms creates hailstones. Hail **ordinarily** falls in a strip from ten to twenty kilometers wide and **up to** forty kilometers long.

A hailstone is usually less than eight centimeters in diameter. However, hailstones can be much bigger than that. Sometimes they are as big as baseballs. The largest hailstone ever recorded weighed over 680 grams and had a diameter of thirteen centimeters.

Hail can do a lot of damage to agriculture, especially since hail usually appears in **mid**summer, when the plants are partly grown. If the crops are destroyed, it is too late to plant more, and the farmer has lost

many; a number of

usually no more than

the middle of



everything. The most damage is done by hailstones that are only the size of peas. In one terrible hailstorm in 1923 in Rostov, in Ukraine, twenty-three people and many cattle were killed.

Snow can cause damage too. It can cave in the roof of a building. A heavy snowstorm can delay airplane flights and cause automobile accidents. Farm animals sometimes die in snowstorms, and when country roads are closed by snow, people can be trapped in their cars and freeze to death. Yet there is nothing more beautiful than the sight of millions of snowflakes falling at night. That is when people think of the beauty, and not the science, of snowflakes.

(2) (4)

Vocabulary

so atmospher		snowflake	microscopic
alternating multiple	in order	up to	fingerprint
Hail falls in a strip		_ forty kilomet	ters long.
In, the s	study of l	ines, angles, and	d shapes is
called geometry.			
The weather is usually warm	or hot in	LINE BUR TO	the heatest oil of their
Some people use		to catch anima	ls.
Some people still believe that	volcanic	eruptions are c	aused by angry gods,
but we know this isn't	til bl. as	LAL TWIN	
Every ha	as six sid	es.	
The boys and girls lined up in	n	rc	ows.
Bacteria are	The	y can't be seen w	without
a microscope.	5.5		
There are	_ reasons	to study earth	quakes, not just one.
	so atmospher alternating multiple Hail falls in a strip, the strain the strip, the strip the strip, the strip	so atmosphere alternating multiple Hail falls in a strip, the study of licalled geometry. The weather is usually warm or hot in Some people use Some people still believe that volcanic but we know this isn't has six side. The boys and girls lined up in They a microscope.	so atmosphere snowflake alternating multiple up to Hail falls in a strip forty kilomete In, the study of lines, angles, and called geometry. The weather is usually warm or hot in to catch anima. Some people use to catch anima. Some people still believe that volcanic eruptions are counting but we know this isn't Every has six sides. The boys and girls lined up in rounds a microscope.



Vocabulary

	ccur	fingerpr	int	up to	1
01	dinarily	hail		SO	pattern
tra	ap	microsco	ope	simply	astonished
1. I v	was		that I was	able to lift 10	00 pounds. I never
th	ought I co	uld.			
2. W	hen did th	e last eruption	of Kilaue	a	? Just mo II
3. Th	ne police _		crim	inals.	
					e's always happy in the
m	orning and	d sad in the eve	ening.	pershaeti r	
					9. If prisonal course the
6. Th	nat's a diffi	cult question.	I really car	n't answer it .	
7		he lea	ves for wo	ork late, but to	oday he's leaving early.
8		can de	estroy a fa	rmer's crops.	
	Vocabul	ary Review: I	Definition	ıs	
Ellilling.		311	al Thursday		
Matci	h each word	with its definiti			
-	1. obs	erve	a. move	ement of the I	Earth
	2. so f	ar	b. also		
	3. in a	ddition	c. ÷		
	4. eart	hquake	d. top la	iyer	oli blow does laqishesim
	_ 5. stor	У	e. CO ₂		An Read word (
_	6. pre	fer	f. floor		
	_ 7. divi	ide	g. fiction	n	
	8. resp	oond	h. of the	sun	
	_ 9. peri	mit	i. watch	ı	
	_ 10. surf	ace	j. answ	er	
		on dioxide	k. like b	etter	
	_ 12. sola	r	l. allow		to Disconstant and P. C.
			m. until	now	





Short Answers

Write hail, snow, or hail and snow after each of these sentences.

1.	As it is blown by the wind, it collects water.
2.	It occurs only in the colder regions of the world.
3.	It is formed of layers of ice and snow.
4.	It can destroy crops
5.	It can cause the death of humans
6.	It is sometimes formed around a piece of dust
7.	It always has six sides or points
8.	It is produced only by thunderstorms

Comprehension Questions

- 1. Why do all snowflakes have six sides or six points?
- 2. Snowflakes start forming around two things. What are they?
- 3. What does a change in humidity do to the formation of a snowflake?
- 4. Why are no two snowflakes alike?
- 5. Where do hailstones form?

9. It is a small round ball. _

10. It can cause damage. _

- 6. What causes both snowflakes and hail to fall to the ground?
- 7. How big is the average hailstone?
- 8. How does hail destroy crops?
- 9. Give an example of how snow can be destructive.
- 10. Which is more destructive, hail or snow? Why?
- 11. Do roadrunners ever see hail?



Main Idea

- 1. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 2 (lines 4–8).
- 2. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 21–30).
- 3. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 10 (lines 57-64)?



g

Word Forms: Negative Prefixes

These are common negative prefixes. Put a word from Number 1 in the first sentence below, and so on. Use the right form of the word.

- 1. dis-: dislike, discomfort, displease, disconnect, dishonest
- 2. un-: unequipped, uncreative, unprepared, unobservant
- 3. non-: nonsmoking, nonalcoholic, nonviolent, nonindustrial
- 4. in-: inactive, inconsiderate, incorrect, inexpensive
- 5. im-: impossible, improbable, immovable, imperfect
- 6. il-: illogical, illiterate
- 7. ir-: irregular, irreligious
- 8. mis-: misbehave, misspell, misunderstand, misspeak

1.	Alice always	the television during a munderstorm.
2.	Bering and his men we	ere for living on the island after
	their boat sank.	
3.	Coke and Pepsi are	drinks.
4.	It is	to eat something in front of someone else and not
	offer him or her some.	
5.	It is	to squeeze water out of a stone.
6.	It is	to think that someone who is
	is	s unintelligent.
7.	v	erbs must be memorized.
8.	There are three	words in your homework paper.
ŀ	Articles	
Pu	t articles in the blanks if	hey are needed.
1.	snowflake form	as inside winter storm cloud when
	microscopic piece of do	ast is trapped inside tiny drop of
2.	This happens in	atmosphere, ten kilometers above Earth.

4. As it falls, it passes t	hrough	areas where	temperature and
humidity va			
5. It is so complex that			
just beginning to un	derstand wh	nat happens.	
6. Every change in	tempera	ature and h	umidity in air
causes chang	ge in	speed and	pattern of
snowflake's formation	on as it mak	es its trip to	_ Earth.
7 hail is	_ small rour	nd ball of al	ternating layers of
snow and _	clear i	ce.	
Compound Wo		nd using a word fron	n the first
Compound Wo		nd using a word fron	
	— — word compou		n the first
Make a one-word or two-column and one from the	word compou second. . sky	a. sign	
Make a one-word or two-acolumn and one from the	word compou second. . sky . science	a. sign b. surgery	n the first
Make a one-word or two-column and one from the	word compou second sky . science . thunder	a. sign b. surgery c. storm	n the first
Make a one-word or two-column and one from the	word compousecond. sky science thunder traffic	a. sign b. surgery c. storm d. walk	n the first
Make a one-word or two-accolumn and one from the	word compousecond. sky science thunder traffic diet	a. sign b. surgery c. storm d. walk e. scraper	n the first
Make a one-word or two-accolumn and one from the	word compousecond. sky science thunder traffic diet ground	a. sign b. surgery c. storm d. walk e. scraper f. force	n the first
Make a one-word or two-accolumn and one from the	word compousecond. sky science thunder traffic diet ground brain	a. sign b. surgery c. storm d. walk e. scraper f. force g. floor	n the first
Make a one-word or two-column and one from the	word compousecond. sky science thunder traffic diet ground brain work	a. sign b. surgery c. storm d. walk e. scraper f. force g. floor h. branch	n the first
Make a one-word or two-accolumn and one from the	word compousecond. sky science thunder traffic diet ground brain work side	a. sign b. surgery c. storm d. walk e. scraper f. force g. floor	n the first



Summarizing

Write a summary of the information about snow. Write five or six sentences.





Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Compare snow and hail.
- 2. Describe a serious winter storm that you experienced or heard about.



lesson

4

Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future



Before You Read

- 1. What is solar energy?
- 2. Do you have anything with you right now that works by solar energy? If so, what is it?
- 3. How do we produce electricity? Name as many ways as you know.



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from the reading in this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. A **conductor** is something that electricity can pass through. Water and metals conduct electricity, but wood does not.
- 2. Another advantage is that it is **solid-state**; that is, there are no moving parts.
- 3. If the top gets dusty, less light enters, and it doesn't work as **efficiently** as it should.
- 4. Developing countries cannot export enough agricultural products and other raw materials.

4 Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future



As populations increase and countries industrialize, the world's demand for energy increases. Our supply of petroleum and gas is limited, but the **photovoltaic cell** offers a solution to the problem of a future energy

- shortage. This cell is already an important source of energy. In fact, it seems almost like **magic**. The photovoltaic cell changes sunlight directly into energy. Solar energy—energy from the sun—is clean, easily available, **inexhaustible**, and free, if the equipment is available.
- without end;

Did you ever reach to open the door at a store or hotel and see it open by itself? Does your camera always let in the right amount of light for your pictures? These are examples of uses of photovoltaic cells. They are also used in calculators and watches, in remote

telecommunication units, and in central power stations to produce electricity. Another important use is in the space exploration program. This program could not exist without the energy produced by photovoltaic cells.



The photovoltaic cell is simple. It has <u>transparent</u> metallic film at the top. Below this is a layer of **silicon**. A metal base is at the bottom.

able to be seen through

The sunlight falls on the **boundary** between the two different types of **semiconductors** in the photovoltaic cell, the silicon and the metal base. A **conductor** is something that electricity can pass through. Water and metals conduct electricity, but wood does not. A semiconductor conducts electricity poorly at low temperatures, but when heat or light is added, conductivity is increased.

As the light falls on this boundary between the two types of semiconductors, it creates an electric current. The sunlight is **converted** directly into electricity.

One advantage of the photovoltaic cell is that it is solid-state; that is, there are no moving parts. Since there are no moving parts to break down, the cell will last a long time if it is protected from damage. This protection is important. If the top of the cell gets dusty, less light enters, and the cell doesn't work as efficiently as it should.

In addition, silicon is one of the most common elements in the world; for example, sand is made up mostly of silicon. At one time, the chemical preparation of silicon for use in a photovoltaic cell was very

expensive. Now the cost has gone down a great deal.
 Scientists have also found a way to produce silicon in long sheets, similar to the way plastic for plastic bags is made today. This is helping the cost of a unit of solar energy to fall even more. Today, there are large factories
 using solar-cell systems in a number of countries.

About 18% of the sunlight that reaches the photovoltaic cell is converted into electricity. This is a small amount, so many cells must be used to create a reasonable amount of electricity. However, technology can be developed to make the cells more efficient and raise the percentage of sunlight converted to 27%.

What does solar energy mean to the world? Photovoltaic cells have several advantages over fossil fuels (gas, oil, and coal). Fossil fuels that we use today changed

because



were formed from plants and animals that lived millions of years ago. Those plants and animals were able to exist because of the sun. Obviously, we can't wait a million years for more fossil fuels. The photovoltaic cell gives us the ability to produce energy directly from the sun. The sun's energy can be converted for our use immediately.

At the present time, gas and oil are expensive.

Developing countries cannot export enough agricultural products and other raw materials to allow them to

import the fuel that they need to produce energy. At the same time, petroleum supplies are limited, and in a few decades, they will run out. However, the supply of sunlight is limitless, and most of the poor countries of the world are in the tropics, where there is plenty of sunlight.

The photovoltaic cell has another very important advantage. It is a clean source of energy. The fossil fuels that we use today are the main source of the pollution in our atmosphere.

Although many individuals and governments have been <u>reluctant</u> to reduce their dependence on fossil fuels, there is a growing market for solar energy. There is even discussion of collecting solar energy on satellites and then beaming it to Earth. This process is called

Space Solar Power. If we truly want cheaper and

85 Space Solar Power. If we truly want cheaper and better ways to create energy, solar power offers many possibilities.

sell to other

hesitant; afraid; unwilling



383	0400	

Vocabulary

	photovoltaic cell	inexhaustible	silicon	semiconductors
	solid-state	reluctant	import	exports
	magic	raw material	reasonable	e exist
1.	Scientists think that	t the	will be	an important energy
	source for the futur	e.		
2.	The number of snow	wflakes is limitle	ss and	and the same of th
	A photovoltaic cell			
4.	Many people are _		_ to try new thi	ngs.
5.	Do you know how:	many kinds of bi	rds	in the
	world today?			
6.	Children like to see	1 411111	shows.	
7.	Japan	televisio	n sets but has to	
		_ oil.		
8.		_ is used to make	e glass.	
9.	Iron is the main		for making stee	el.
	Vocabulary			
		eluctant	since	efficient
		export	reasonable	transparent
		mport	conducts	converts
1.	Electric current can	pass through me	tal because meta	-114-1-182 unal
	electricity.			
2.	He was	to drive	e at first, but nov	v he loves to drive.
3.	Much of the	be	tween Canada ai	nd the United States is
	a straight line.			
4.	Abdullah missed the	e test	he wa	s late for class.
5.	Thirty minutes is a		length of tim	ne for a short test.
ó.	There is something		about watch	ing the sun rise.
	It is more			
	thirty different cars.			



8. Glass is	
9. A hydroelectric power station into electricity.	water power
C Vocabulary Review	
Underline the word that does not belong with the	others.
 hail, snowflake, trap, rain create, damage, destroy, harm definite, sure, exact, bacteria satellite, planet, star, sun consider, object, discuss, talk over backwards, forward, clockwise, sideward physicist, anthropologist, chemist, geologis burst, eruption, flood, earthquake fly, bee, ant, snake 	
The state of the s	
1. Solar energy will not be in the futur a. expensive	
3. The place where the two semiconductors ma. borderb. conductor	eet is called the
4. A semiconductor works best whena. there is wood availableb. the temperature is lowc. light or heat is added	
5. A photovoltaic cell light into electric a. current b. converts c. conducts	
Lesson 4: Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source	F 20.

- 6. The cell must be protected from .
 - a. dust
 - b. light
 - c. movement
- 7. At first, these cells were expensive to make because _
 - a. the chemical preparation of silicon was expensive
 - b. silicon is expensive and hard to find
 - c. it is hard to keep dirt off the cells
- 8. Most of today's air pollution comes from _
 - a. automobiles
 - b. burning fossil fuels
 - c. factories



Comprehension Questions

- 1. Why do we need a new way to produce energy?
- 2. Describe a photovoltaic cell.
- 3. Give three advantages of photovoltaic cells over fossil fuels.
- 4. In what part of the cell is the electric current created?
- 5. What does *solid-state* mean?
- 6. What happens when a photovoltaic cell gets dusty?
- 7. Why was energy from photovoltaic cells expensive in the beginning?
- 8. How can these cells help developing countries?
- 9. Why are photovoltaic cells so important in the space program?



Main Idea

- 1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 1 (lines 1–10)?
- 2. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 2 (lines 11–19).
- 3. Write the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 34–40).
- 4. What is the main idea of paragraph 9 (lines 57–66)?



Scanning

- 1. Name a material in the reading that does not conduct electricity.
- 2. Name a material in the reading that is made mostly of silicon.
- 3. Name three fossil fuels.



h	T 14/ 1	
	Two-Word	Verb

Learn these two-word	verbs and	then f	ill in	the	blanks	with	the	right	words.	Use	the
correct verb form.											

	get in = arrive (for example, a bus o	or plane)	
	bring up = raise (fe	or example, childrer	n)	
	show up = appear			
	stand by = wait at	a certain place (for e ou do not have a res	•	a seat on an airplane
	leave out = skip; fo	rget to include (som	ething)	
1.	When Ali did his ho	mework, he		the third exercise. He
	forgot to do it.			
2.	What time does the	train from Paris	واسطر طلب	?
				flight, but if someone
	doesn't			
		until everyone has	-	
4.	Mary was born on a	farm, but she was		in a
	small town.			
	1 00: 1 14/ 1			
	Missing Words	-		
Fi	ll in the blanks with an	y word that fits in the	sentence.	
		,		tries industrialize.
	energy increases.			
2.	This cell	already _		important
	source			1
3.				open
		door		•
				1
4.	This program could		_ exist	the
	energy produced			
	0, 1	1		

5.	. It has transparent metallic film _		the top.		
		this is	layer of silicon.		
6.	The sunlight falls		the boundary		
	the two different ty	pes	semiconductors,		
			the metal base.		
7.	One advantage		the photovoltaic cell is that it is solid-		
	state;	is,	are no moving parts.		
8.	Since there	n	no moving parts to break		
		_, the cell	last		
		_ long time _	it is protected		
		_ damage.			
9.	If	top of	cell		
		_ dusty, less _	enters,		
		_ the cell	work as efficiently		
		_ it should.			
	Word Forms				
A	common use of adje	ctives is in sent	tences of this form:		
	It is + adjective _		<u></u>		
Th	ere are two sentence	e patterns:			
	T	•			

It is necessary to memorize irregular verbs. It is beautiful to walk by the ocean on a moonlit night. It is important that you fill out these papers immediately. It is wonderful that you won first place in the competition.



Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	trap	trap trapper	trapped	
2.	alternate	alternate alternative	alternate alternative	alternately alternatively
3.	occur	occurrence		Town Trie 1/4
4.	bound	boundary	bound	
5.	theorize	theory	theoretical	theoretically
6.		efficiency	(in)efficient	(in)efficiently
7.		reasonableness	(un)reasonable	(un)reasonably
8.	exhaust	exhaustion	exhausted (in)exhaustible	(in)exhaustibly
9.		transparency	transparent	transparently
10.	convert	conversion	convertible	The Part Course
1.	When an ar	nimal is	, it car	n't get away.
2. There is no to our plan. We can find no				
		plan		

1.	1. When an animal is	, it can t get away.
2.	2. There is no to our j	olan. We can find no
	plan.	
3.	3. There were three o	f breakdowns at the electric
	power station.	
4.	4. Norway is by Swee	den, Finland, Russia, the Atlantic
	Ocean, and the North Sea.	
5.	5. Scientists about the	center of the Earth, but they
	can't know for sure.	
6.	6. It is to write by har	nd instead of using a computer.
7.	7. It is to expect a stud	dent to memorize fifty new words
	a day.	
8.	8. Scott and his men became	on their journey back
	from the South Pole.	
9.	9 is a characteristic of	water and glass.
0.	0. Missionaries try to	people to their religion.

10. Missionaries try to _

k

Finding the Reason

Write the reason for each statement.

Statement	Reason	
The entrance door at a hotel opens by itself.		Cond. Land
2. Electricity can pass through water.		thought the
3. The first photovoltaic cells were very expensive.		
4. These cells can help developing countries.		
5. Energy from the sun is inexhaustible.		
6. The photovoltaic cell can't break down.		
7. The photovoltaic cell might work inefficiently.		



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

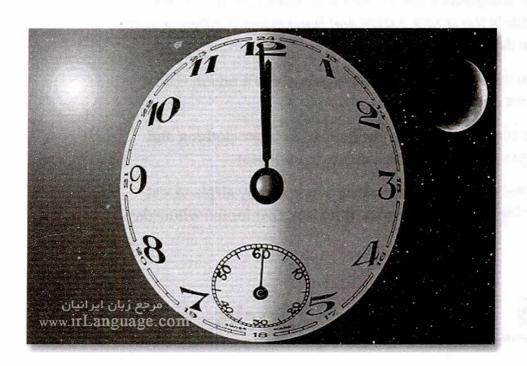
- 1. What are some of the advantages of solar energy over energy made from fossil fuels?
- 2. What are some of the disadvantages of solar energy?



Biological Clocks

lesson

5



Before You Read

- 1. How do you feel when you have to get up much earlier than usual?
- 2. Do you feel best early in the morning, in the middle of the day, in the afternoon, at sunset, or late at night?
- 3. If you take a long trip on an airplane, do you have trouble getting used to the time change?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. In the **temperate** zones of the Earth, trees lose their leaves in the fall. In the spring, leaves and flowers begin growing again as the days lengthen.
- 2. When winter comes, some birds migrate to a region with a warmer climate.
- 3. To be comfortable on an airplane, wear **loose** clothing and take your shoes off while you are in your seat.
- 4. On the fourth day before taking a long trip by airplane, eat three big meals. Then, on the third day, fast for the whole day.

5 Biological Clocks



If you have ever flown across several time zones, you have experienced **jet lag.** You arrived in a new time zone, but your body was still living on the time in the old zone. You were **wide awake** and ready for dinner in the middle of the night, and you wanted to sleep all day.

People suffer from jet lag because all living things have a **biological** clock. Plants and animals are all in **rhythm** with the natural divisions of time—day and night and the seasons.

a regular beat

At sunrise, plants open their leaves and begin producing food. At night, they rest. In the **temperate** zones of the Earth, trees lose their leaves in the fall as the days grow shorter and there is less sunlight. In the spring, leaves and flowers begin growing again as the days lengthen.

Rain sets the rhythm of desert plants. Plants in the desert may appear dead for months or even years, but when it begins to rain, the plants seem to come to life



overnight. The leaves turn green, and flowers appear. 20 The plants produce seeds quickly, before the rain stops. These seeds may lie on the ground for years

before rain starts the cycle of growth again. The plants biological clock gives the signal for these things

to happen.

25

At <u>dawn</u>, most birds wake up and start singing. When the sun goes down, they go to sleep. When spring arrives, they start looking for a mate. When winter comes, some birds migrate to a region with a warmer climate. Their biological clocks tell them that it is time to 30 do all of these things.

Animals that live near the sea and depend on both the land and water for their food have their biological clocks set with the tides. When the tide goes out, they know that it is time to search for the food that the 35 sea left behind.

Some insects seem to set their alarm clocks to wake them up at night. They stay out all night looking for food, and then they sleep during the day. Honeybees have a very strong sense of time. They can tell by the 40 position of the sun exactly when their favorite flowers open.

Some French scientists did an experiment with honeybees. They put out sugar water every morning at 10:00 and at noon, and the bees came to drink the 45 water at exactly the right time. Then the scientists put the sugar water in a room that was brightly lit twenty-four hours a day. They started putting the sugar water out at 8:00 p.m. It took the bees a week to find it at the different hour, but from then on, they 50 came to eat in the evening instead of in the morning. Later, the scientists took the honeybees to New York. The bees came for the food at the time their bodies told

Humans, like other animals, have a biological clock 55 that tells them when to sleep and eat. It causes other changes too. Blood pressure is lower at night, the heartbeat is slower, and the body temperature is a little

them, only it was 3:00 p.m. New York time. Their

bodies were still on Paris time.



lower. We even go through several levels of sleep, cycles 60 of deep and light sleep.

Other events occur in cycles too. More babies are born between midnight and dawn than at any other time. More natural deaths occur at night, but more heart attacks happen early in the morning. Most deaths from 65 diseases in hospitals occur between midnight and 6:00 a.m. Some police say that there are more violent

The honeybees in the experiment reset their biological clock for different feeding hours. Humans do 70 this too. People who work at night learn to sleep during the day and eat at night. Students who fly halfway across the world to study in another country get used to the new time zone after a few days. When they go home, they change back again. Our bodies are 75 controlled by a biological clock, but we can learn to reset it to a different time.

crimes and traffic accidents when there is a full moon.

How to **Lessen** Jet Lag

- 1. Try not to become exhausted before you leave. Get plenty of sleep, and leave enough time to get to the airport and check in without having to hurry.
- 2. Wear <u>loose</u> clothing and take your shoes off while you are in your seat.
- 3. Walk around the plane and move around in your seat.
- 85 4. Figure out breakfast time in the time zone you are flying to. Four days before your flight, start a feast (eating a lot) and fast (eating nothing or very little) schedule. On the fourth day before you fly, eat three heavy meals. If you drink coffee, tea, or cola drinks that contain caffeine, have them only between 90 3:00 and 5:00 p.m. On the third day before your flight, eat very lightly—salads, light soups, fruits, and juices. Again, have drinks with caffeine only between 3:00 and 5:00 p.m. On the next to the last 95

day before you leave, feast again. On the day before you leave, fast. If you are flying west, drink caffeinated drinks in the morning; if you are going east, drink them between 6:00 and 11:00 p.m.

not tight



80

5. On the day you leave, have your first meal at the time people in the new time zone eat breakfast. If the flight is long, sleep on the plane until the new breakfast time, and don't drink any alcohol. When you wake up, have a big meal. Stay awake and active, and eat at the new time zone hours.



Vocabulary

	signal	active	wide awake	attack
	alarm	biology	rhythm	jet lag
	temperate	migrate	heartbeat	fast
1.	Countries with		_ climates have fo	our different seasons.
2.	The science and stu	dy of life is call	ed	
3.	You should drive a	car only when	you are	A STATE OF THE STA
4.	Some people like to	listen to the _		of the falling rain.
5.	Many people		for religious reaso	ons.
6.	When the fire		sounded, everyor	ne left the building.
7.	Doctors listen to a p	oerson's	thro	ough a stethoscope to
	see if there are any	irregularities.		
8.	Larger animals will	often	smalle	er animals.
9.	Pilots don't usually	suffer from		because they never
	stay in the new time	e zone very long	3.	

b Vocabulary

	rhythm	dawn	temperate	tides
	feast	lessens	migrate	signal
	active	caffeine	loose	attack
1.	Chocolate, tea, co	offee, and cola d	rinks contain	
2.	The police officer	gave a	for the c	ars to stop.
3.	Some birds		to a warmer climate is	n the winter.
4.	The villagers pre	pared a	to entert	ain the visiting
	government offic	ials.		
5.	There are high ar	nd low	in the oce	an twice a day.
6.	The sun rises at _			
7.		is the oppo	site of <i>tight</i> .	
8.	A different diet _		the effects of jet la	ıg.
9.	People who are _		seem to live longe	er than people who
	don't get much ex	xercise.		
	Vocabulary	Review		
	-			nses
	astonishing	•	tools ser	nses vers
	cope flood	projects		rface
4		colony		
1.			ou should move to a	
	A carpenter can			-*
3.	Your biological of	clock has an	effec	ct on your body.
4.	In cold climates,	it makes sense	to wear several	
	of clothing.			
5.	Dust on the		of a photovoltaic cel	l makes it
	work inefficientl	y.		
6.	Hearing is one o	f the five		
7.	A ball or other ro	ound object		
Q	The temperature	horo	from 30°E	to 00°E



9.	Biosph	neres are special at some environmental
	resear	ch laboratories.
10.	It's dif	ficult to when several bad things happen at
	the sar	ne time.
	True	e/False/Not Enough Information
	1.	Jet lag occurs when your body is in one time zone but your
		biological clock is in another.
	2.	Plants begin producing nutrients when the sun rises.
	3.	Plants in Iceland and Greenland can produce nutrients
		twenty-four hours a day during the summer.
_	4.	A biological clock gives birds the signal that it is time to migrate.
	5.	Animals that live near the sea search for food at night when it
		is safer.
	6.	The honeybees in the experiment reset their biological clocks.
	7.	After a few days, the bees probably changed their biological
		clocks to New York time.
	8.	The human biological clock affects many parts of the body.
	9.	Humans cannot change their biological clocks once they are set,
		but bees can.
_	10.	You can decrease the effects of jet lag.

Comprehension Questions

- 1. What makes desert plants produce seeds?
- 2. Why do birds wake at dawn?
- 3. How do honeybees know when a flower opens?
- 4. Why do honeybees want to know when a flower opens?
- 5. What is the time difference between New York and Paris?
- 6. Why should you wear loose clothing on a long flight?
- 7. Why should you have breakfast at breakfast time in the new time zone on the day you leave?





Main Idea

Copy or write a sentence for the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 16–24)
- 2. Paragraph 8 (lines 42-54)
- 3. Paragraph 9 (lines 55–60)
- 4. Paragraph 11 (lines 68–76)



Word Forms: Adjectives

Both the **-ing** form of the verb (the present participle) and the **-ed** form (the past participle) are used as adjectives. The **-ed** form often shows that the noun received the action, or it describes how a person feels. The **-ing** form often shows some action that the noun took, or it describes an object or possibly a person. However, there are many exceptions.

David was bored because the movie was boring.

Tome is interested in stamps. He thinks stamps are interesting.

Mary is an **interesting** person because she can talk about a lot of different things.

Put the right participle form of the verb in parentheses in each sentence.

Climbing a mountain is (exhaust) _______ work.
 Al was (exhaust) ______ after the soccer game.
 Mr. Davis is a very (demand) ______ teacher. He makes the students work hard and do their best.
 There are two kinds of electric current, direct and (alternate) ______.
 The (trap) _____ animal couldn't escape.
 A (damage) _____ car needs to be fixed.
 Children like to play (guess) _____ games.
 The breakup of their marriage was a (surprise) _____ event.
 American football is a (complicate) _____ game.
 Being in an airplane crash is a (terrify) _____ experience.



Word Forms: Semi-

Semi- is a prefix that means half or partly. These are some common words with this prefix:

semicircle semicolon (;) semitransparent semifinal (describing the next-to-last round in sports competitions); semifinalist semitropical (Hawaii is semitropical, but it is not in the tropics.) semiyearly (twice a year) semiretired semiprivate (describing a hospital room with beds for two or three patients) semiprecious

Use five of these words in interesting sentences.



Prepositions

ui	the right preposition in each viank.
	If you have ever flown several time zones, you have experienced jet lag.
2.	You arrived a new time zone, but your body was still living
	the time the old zone.
3.	You were wide awake and ready dinner the middle
	the night.
4.	Plants and animals are all rhythm the natural divisions
	time.
5.	the temperate zones the Earth, trees lose their leaves
	the fall as the days grow shorter.
б.	Plants the desert may appear dead months or even years.
7.	Some animals depend the sea for their food.
8.	Some insects wake up night.



9. Honeybees can tell	the position the sun exactly when their
favorite flowers open.	
10. Scientists put out sugar w	ater every morning 10:00 and
noon.	
Connecting Words	
Use since, when, until, or even with one from the second column	though to connect a sentence from the first column.
1. The bees were ready to eat	
evening meal.	b. It kept her awake.
2. It has been snowing.	c. It becomes dusty.
Chris stopped drinking coff in the evening.	fee d. The sun went down. e. The sun rises.
4. Birds start singing.	e. The sun fises.
 A photovoltaic cell is efficie 	nt.
-	
Sequence	
Put these sentences about the Fre	nch experiment in the right order.
a. The scientists took t	reference and a reference and a real and a second
b. Some French scienti	
c. They put the sugar	
, .	water out at 10:00 a.m. and at noon.
	food at 3:00 p.m. New York time.
	k to find the food at a different time.
g. The bees came every	vevening at 8:00 p.m.



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. What does biological clock mean? Give examples.
- 2. Describe a time when you experienced jet lag.



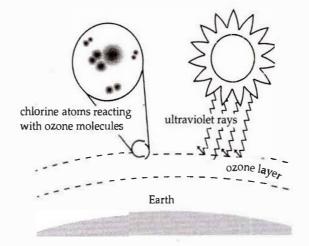
Video Highlights



Before You Watch

- 1. Use your own knowledge and a world map to discuss these questions.
 - a. Which hemisphere of the Earth do you live in, the Northern Hemisphere or the Southern Hemisphere?
 - b. Is it safe or dangerous to spend a lot of time in direct sunlight? Why?
 - c. What are some of the things people use that cause damage to the Earth's atmosphere?
- 2. The paragraph below describes a chemical process that takes place in the Earth's atmosphere. Use the diagram to fill in the missing words.

The ozone layer is part of the atmosphere that surrounds the Earth. It is made up of ozone (O_3) molecules, which form a protective shield against the ______ rays of the sun. Some of the things people use every day are causing serious damage to the ozone layer. For example, chemicals used for air conditioning and refrigerators release harmful chlorine (Cl) molecules into the atmosphere. The chlorine molecules react with the _____ molecules to break them down. This process gradually eats up the ozone layer.





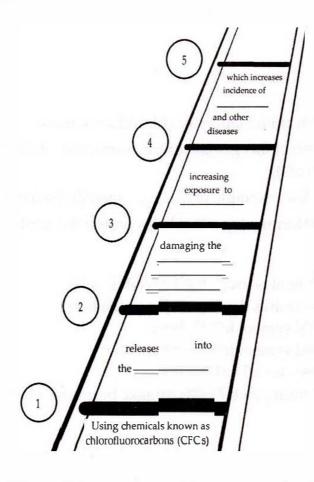
According to the scientists in the video, which of the following is the main cause of damage to the ozone layer?

- flights over the Northern Hemisphere
- ultraviolet rays from the sun
- widespread use of manmade chemicals

C After You Watch

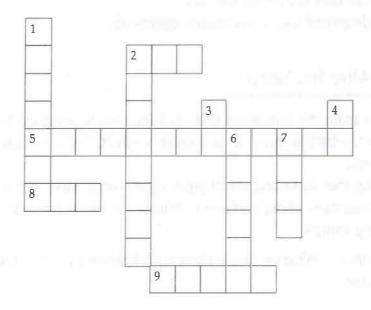
- 1. Start from the bottom of this "ladder." Each cause leads to an effect, which in turn causes another effect. Fill in the missing words.
- 2. Using the cause and effect ladder you completed, explain to a partner how using certain chemicals can cause harm to all living things.

Example: When you use chemicals known as CFCs, they release . . .



Activity Page

Chemical Crossword Puzzle



Across

- 2. Common abbreviation for chlorofluorocarbon
- 5. Too much of this gas can cause destruction of the rain forest (two words).
- 8. Silicon is an example of a _____-metallic element.
- 9. This gas forms a layer that helps protect the Earth from the sun.

Down

- 1. This element is used in photovoltaic cells.
- 2. This gas causes damage to the ozone layer.
- 3. Chemical symbol for #1 down
- 4. Chemical symbol for #7 down
- 6. Necessary for all animal life
- 7. A very strong metal used to make beams for skyscrapers

Doing Dictionary Research

1. Look up the word *geothermal* in your dictionary. How many other words do you see that begin with geo-?

ge·og·ra·phy /dʒi'agrəfi/ n. 1 the scientific study of the earth's surface, features, climate, people, etc.: I bought a new atlas for my geography class. 2 the way parts of a place are positioned within it, (syn.) layout: I can't meet you inside the mall because I don't know the geography of the place, and I might get lost. -adj. **geographic**/,djiə'græfik/.

ge·ol·o·gy / $\frac{1}{2}$ i'alə $\frac{1}{2}$ i / n. the scientific study of the earth through its rocks, soil, etc.: In geology we studied the rocks and deserts of California. -n.

geologist; -adj. geologic /ˌʤiəˈluʤɪk/.

ge·o·met·ric / dia metrik / adj. with regular shapes and lines: The mosque's walls are decorated with geometric designs.

ge·om·e·try / $\frac{1}{2}$ i'amətri/ n. the study in mathematics of lines, angles, shapes, etc.: It is important to study

geometry if you want to be an architect.

ge·o·phys·ics / diou'fiziks/ n.pl. used with a sing. v. the study in geology that uses physics to examine the movements and activities of the earth

ge·o·pol·i·tics / diou'palatiks/ n.pl. used with a sing. v. the study of how geography affects the

politics of a country

ge·o·ther·mal / ˌʤioʊˈθɜrməl/ adj. related to heat found deep inside the earth: The geysers in Yellowstone National Park are geothermal because of hot water coming from inside the earth. See: geyser.

- 2. This dictionary page has seven words beginning with *geo*. Read their definitions and answer the following questions.
 - a. How are the meanings of the words *geography*, *geology*, *geometric*, *geophysics*, and *geopolitics* alike?
 - b. What do you think the prefix geo- means?
- 3. Look up the words *psychology, microscopic*, and *semiconductor* in your dictionary. Look for other words nearby that have related meanings. Then complete the chart below.

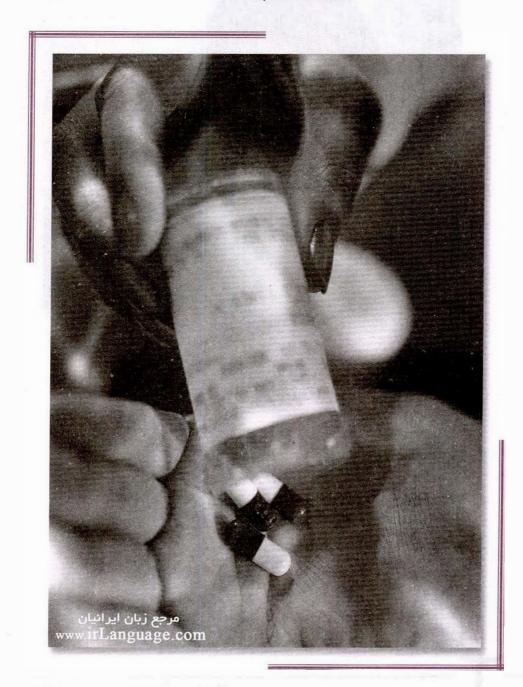
Word	Related Word	Prefix	Meaning
psychology	psychopath psychic	psych-	related to the mind
microscopic			Sell re-
semiconductor			in May make

Medicine and Health

unit 5

Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.

—Benjamin Franklin



Headaches

lesson



Before You Read

- 1. How often do you have a headache?
- 2. What causes you to have a headache?
- 3. How do you treat your headaches?





Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Sometimes headaches start with a change in **vision**. The person sees wavy lines, black dots, or bright spots in front of the eyes.
- 2. Some headaches cause **blurred** vision, and you can't read or drive.
- 3. Cluster headaches come in clusters, or groups, for two or three months.
- 4. If you have a headache and it continues over several days, or keeps **recurring**, it is time to talk to a doctor.

1 Headaches

Some little man is inside your head, **pounding** on your brain with a **hammer**. Beside him, a rock musician is playing a drum. Your head feels as if it is going to explode. You have a **headache**, and you think it will never go away.

Doctors say that there are several kinds of headaches. Each kind begins in a different place and needs a different treatment. One kind of headache starts in the **arteries** in the head. The arteries <u>swell</u> and send **pain** signals to the brain. Sometimes these headaches start

- signals to the brain. Sometimes these headaches start with a change in <u>vision</u>. The person sees wavy lines, black dots, or bright spots in front of the eyes. This is a <u>warning</u> that a headache is coming. The headache occurs on only one side of the head. Vision is **blurred**, and the
- person may **vomit** from the pain. These headaches, which are called **migraine** headaches, are more frequent in women than in men. Sleep is the best cure for them.





get larger

ability to see; sight



Cluster headaches, which also start in the arteries, are called cluster headaches because they come in clusters, or groups, for two or three months. Then there are no more for several months or even years. A cluster headache lasts up to two hours and then goes away. At the beginning of the headache, the eyes are red and watery. There is a <u>steady</u> pain in the head. When the pain finally goes away, the head is <u>sore</u>. Men have more cluster headaches than women do.

continuing painful



The muscle headache, which starts in the muscles in the neck or **forehead**, is caused by **tension**. A person works too hard, is nervous about something, or has problems at work, at school, or at home. The neck and head muscles become tense, and the headache starts. A muscle headache usually starts in the morning and gets worse as the hours pass. There is a steady pain, pressure, and a bursting feeling. Usually **aspirin** doesn't help a muscle headache very much.

How do doctors treat headaches? If a person has frequent headaches, the doctor first has to decide what kind they are. Medicine can help, but there are other ways to treat them.

The doctor asks the patient to **analyze** his or her daily living patterns. A change in diet or an increase in exercise might stop the headaches. If the **patient** realizes that difficulties at home, at work, or at school are causing the tension, it might be possible to make **lifestyle**

changes and decrease these problems. Psychological problems and even medicine for another **physical** problem can cause headaches. The doctor has to discuss and analyze all these patterns in the patient's life. A headache can also be a signal of a more serious problem.

Everyone has headaches from time to time. In the United States alone, up to 50 million people each year go to the doctor because of headaches. If you have a headache and it continues over several days, or keeps

recurring, it is time to talk to a doctor. There is no magic cure for headaches, but recent research allows doctors to control most of them.

of the body

occurring again



a Vocabulary



	pounded clusters	swells sore	lifestyle forehead	migraine aspirin		
	recur	analyze	pain	hammer		
1.	To	means	to happen again.	Learner of Intelligible		
2.	If your arm is	2	, it hurts. You have	ve a		
	1	in your arr	m.			
3.	The	is the	top part of the face.			
4.		helps some	e kinds of headaches	3. mg 4 mg Mgs-L u		
5.	When we wer	nt to our friend's a	partment, we knock	ed and then		
		on the doo	or, but no one answer	red.		
6.	One kind of h	eadache is called a	ı	-•		
7.	A	is one ki	nd of tool.			
8.	When you put	air in a bicycle tii	re, the tire	until it fits		
	the wheel exac	etly.				
9.	After the TOE	FL test, the studen	nts gathered in small	- Hiller S		
	to talk about it					
10.	Even though h	ne is very rich, his		is just like an		
	ordinary perso	on's.				
11.	Before you do	anything, you sho	ould	the		
	situation caref	ully.				
b	Vocabulary	<u>/</u>				
а	iche	warned	blurred	arteries		
	omit	hammer	physical	swell		
S	teady	patients	vision	tense		
1.	1. When you are sick and in pain, your stomach may protest and make					
	you					
2.	The teacher		the children that th	ey had to behave or		
	there would be no party.					
3.	Sick people in	the hospital are ca	illed			

4.	to	0	ater in her eye. Everything looked
5.			before an important exam.
			mination is necessary for anyone
	•		enelogy men
7.			rain continued
		and the state of the	
8.	· ·	arry blood from	n the heart to the rest of the body.
			if you eat too much.
			wear glasses or contact lenses.
			griffmatic Willes armold
	Vocabulary Review	v: Antonyms	
2082	<u> </u>	,	d halfe is inthulteen in Brief for the
Mai	tch the opposites.		
	1. fiction	a. point	
-	2. scatter	b. import	
	3. active	c. nonfiction	nestment our HBC we have to
-	4. reluctant	d. ordinary	
	5. unique	e. microscoj	oe and the same an
	6. last	f. run out	
	7. export	g. gather	
	8. loose	h. increase	
	9. fast	i. inactive	
	10. lessen	j. eager	
		k. feast	
		l. tight	
	Multiple Choice		
a b	1.1	k dots or wavy	y lines, this is a change in

2.	A migraine headache causes	the spirit w
	a. blurred vision	
	b. red and watery eyes	
	c. a bursting feeling	
3.	is the best cure for migraines.	
	a. Sleep	
	b. Aspirin	
	c. Arteries	
4.	have more headaches that leave the l	nead sore.
	a. Women	
	b. Men	
	c. Older people	
5.	A headache starts in the morning and	d gets worse.
	a. migraine	a geto worse.
	b. cluster	
	c. muscle	
6.	Tension causes a headache.	
٠.	a. migraine	
	b. cluster	
	c. muscle	
7	Medicine is headaches.	
, .	a. the best treatment for	
	b. not usually helpful for	
	c. one way to treat	
8	A change in a patient's lifestyle can	
0.	a. help cure headaches	
	b. cause headaches	
	c. both a and b	
30	Comprehension Questions	



- 1. Describe a migraine headache.
- 2. Describe a cluster headache.
- 3. Describe a muscle headache.
- 4. Which kind of headache affects more women than men?

- 5. What are some things that can cause a muscle headache?
- 6. If you have a headache, will aspirin help?
- 7. Why does a doctor analyze the life patterns of a headache patient?
- 8. How many people each year in the United States go to a doctor for headaches?



Main Idea

Write the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 2 (lines 6–17)
- 2. Paragraph 3 (lines 18-26)
- 3. Paragraph 7 (lines 51-57)



Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

38 3	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	press	pressure		
2.		reluctance	reluctant	reluctantly
3.	migrate	migration	migrant	
4.	lessen	least	less	
5.	warn	warning		
6.	pain	pain	painful painless	painfully painlessly
7.	swell	swelling	swollen	
8.	recur	recurrence	recurrent	recurrently
9.	tense	tension	tense	tensely
10.	prove	proof	proven	

1.	Mr. Johnson has high blood	He has to take medicine	
	every day.	" Inditional leads: 135	
2.	She agreed to	o play basketball.	
3.	Scientists study the	of birds.	
4.	The pain of some headaches is	by aspirin.	
5.	A fire alarm is a	to leave the building.	
6.	A broken arm is		
7.	Dan hurt his hand, and now it is _	early the May !	
8.	After the fifth	of a bad headache, Mark went to	
	a doctor.		
9.	causes musc	le headaches.	
10.	Scientists have	_ that photovoltaic cells convert	
	sunlight directly into energy. This	wassome	
	years ago.		

h

Scanning

Scan the text to assign each of these sentences to the correct column. In the correct column, write the number of the line in the text where you found the idea.

	Migraine	Cluster	Muscle
a. They come in groups.		and con	
b. It starts in the neck or forehead.	-	5 Co03-1	
c. It is caused by tension.			at a r
d. There is a change in vision.	La Propher		617
e. There may not be any for several years.		Elwan	
f. Aspirin doesn't help.	S-11 104081		
g. Sleep helps.			
h. It occurs on only one side of the head.			
i. It lasts for two hours or less.			
j. Problems at work can cause it.			



Noun Substitutes

What do these words stand for?

1.	page 227	line 2	him	
2.	page 227	line 3	it	
3.	page 227	line 12	this	:0

4. page 227 line 17 **them** _____

5. page 228 line 18 **which** _____

6. page 228 line 27 **which** _____

7. page 228 lines 40 **his or her** _____

8. page 228 line 57 **them** _____



Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

1. Beside him, _____rock musician is playing _____ drum.

2. Each kind begins in _____ different place and needs _____ different treatment.

3. One kind of headache starts in _____ arteries in ____ head.

4. _____ arteries swell and send _____ pain signals to _____ brain.

5. Sometimes these headaches start with a change in _____ vision.

6. person sees _____ wavy lines, _____ black dots, or _____ bright spots in front of _____ eyes.

7. This is _____ warning that _____ headache is coming.

8. _____ headache occurs on only one side of _____ head.

9. _____ vision is blurred, and _____ person may vomit from ____ pain.

10. _____sleep is _____best cure for them.



Verb + Adjective

Adjectives usually follow these verbs: be, feel, become, seem, act, appear, look, smell, taste.

She is sick.

He appears tired.

She feels sick.

He looks tired.

She became sick a week ago.

It smells good.

He seems tired.

It tastes good.

He acts tired.

Use each verb in an interesting sentence.



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. Describe the different kinds of headaches.
- 2. Discuss ways to treat and cure headaches.

Sleep and Dreams

lesson

2



Before You Read

- 1. How often do you dream?
- 2. Do you walk in your sleep?
- 3. Why do you think we dream?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Scientists have learned a great deal by studying people as they sleep, but there is still much that they don't understand.
- 2. Your brain never really sleeps. It is never actually blank.
- 3. During a dream, the brain may **concentrate** on a problem and look for different solutions.
- 4. Some people grind their teeth while they sleep. They wake up with a sore **jaw** or a headache.
- 5. Lots of people take sleeping pills, but these are dangerous because they can be **addictive**. If you take them for several weeks, it is hard to stop taking them.

2 Sleep and Dreams



Sleep is very important to humans; the average person spends 220,000 hours of his or her lifetime sleeping. Doctors and scientists have learned <u>a great</u> <u>deal</u> in the last thirty years by studying people as they sleep, but there is still much that they don't understand.

a lot

Scientists study the body characteristics that change during sleep, such as body temperature, brain waves, blood pressure, breathing, and heartbeat. They also study rapid eye movement (REM). These scientists have

10 learned that there is a kind of sleep with REM and another kind with no rapid eye movement (NREM).

NREM is divided into three **stages.** In stage one, when you start to go to sleep, you have a pleasant floating feeling. A sudden noise can wake you up. In stage two, you sleep more deeply, and a noise will



probably not wake you. In stage three, which you reach in less than thirty minutes, the brain waves are less active and stretched out. Then, within another half hour, you reach REM sleep. This stage might last an hour and a half and is the time when you dream. For the rest of the night, REM and NREM sleep alternate.

Sleep is a biological need, but your brain never really sleeps. It is never actually **blank**. The things that were on your mind during the day are still there at night. They appear as dreams. At times, people believed that dreams had magical powers or that they could tell the future.

Sometimes dreams are terrifying, but they are usually a collection of scattered, <u>confused</u> thoughts. If you dream about something that is worrying you, you may wake up exhausted, <u>sweating</u>, and with a rapid heartbeat. Dreams can have positive effects on our lives. During a dream, the brain may <u>concentrate</u> on a problem and look for different solutions. Also, people who dream during a good night's sleep are more likely to remember newly learned skills. In other words, you learn better if you dream.

Researchers say that normal people may have four or five REM <u>periods</u> of dreaming a night. The first one may begin only a half hour after they fall asleep. Each period of dreaming is a little longer, the final one lasting up to an hour. Dreams also become more <u>intense</u> as the night continues. <u>Nightmares</u> usually occur toward dawn.

Certain people can control some of their dreams and make sure they have a happy ending. Some people get relief from bad dreams by writing them down and then changing the negative stories or thoughts into positive ones on paper. Then they study the paper before they go to sleep again.

Sleepwalking is most common among children.
They usually grow out of it by the time they become
adolescents. Children don't remember that they were
walking in their sleep, and they don't usually wake up
if the parent leads them back to bed.

Some people have a **habit** of grinding their teeth while they sleep. They wake up with a sore **jaw** or a headache, and they can also damage their teeth.



mixed up

think hard

lengths of time

very strong bad dreams

teenagers



Researchers don't know why people talk, walk, or grind their teeth while they are asleep.

There are lots of jokes about **snoring**, but it isn't really funny. People snore because they have trouble breathing while they are asleep. Some snorers have a condition called sleep apnea. They stop breathing up to thirty or forty times an hour because the throat muscles relax too much and **block** the airway. Then they breathe in some air and start snoring. This is a dangerous condition because, if the brain is without oxygen for four minutes, there will be **permanent** brain damage. Sleep apnea can also cause irregular heartbeats, high blood pressure, and a general lack of energy.

lasting forever

Most people need from 7½ to 8½ hours of sleep a night, but this varies with the individual. Babies sleep eighteen hours, and old people need less sleep than younger people. If someone continually sleeps longer than normal for no <u>apparent</u> reason, there may be something physically or psychologically wrong.

obvious; adjective for appear

What should you do if you have trouble sleeping? Lots of people take sleeping pills, but these are dangerous because they can be **addictive**. If you take them for several weeks, it is hard to stop taking them.

Doctors say the best thing is to try to relax and to avoid bad habits. Caffeine keeps people awake, so don't drink anything with caffeine in the evening. Smoking and alcohol can also keep you awake. You may have trouble sleeping if you have a heavy meal just before you go to bed.

You may also have trouble sleeping if you have something on your mind. Try to relax. If you are thinking about a problem or about something exciting that is going to happen the next day, get up and write about it. That will help take it off your mind. You can also get up and read or watch television. Be sure to choose a book or show that is not too exciting, or you may get so interested that you won't want to go to sleep even when you feel sleepy.

Sleep is important to humans. We spend a third of our lives sleeping, so we need to understand everything we can about sleep. Sweet dreams!

75

a Vocabulary

	stage	periods	snore	habit
	blank	nightmare	confused	block
	a great deal	relief	sweat	concentrate
1.	. It is hard to		on your homework	c if your roommate is
	playing loud m	usic.		
2.	. The instructor	asked everyone	to take out a	piece of
	paper.			and that he we
3.	. In the first	فيحد لابماني	_ of a volcanic eruptic	on, the volcano sends
	out smoke.		pay list level being a list	
4.	. A	is a bac	d dream.	
5.	Do you	l	oudly when you sleep	?
6.	The school day	is divided into	several	, one for
	each class.			
7.	It's a	who	en the sun comes out a	fter a bad storm.
			of having a cup of	
	gets home from		and the second	
9.	·		self-place self-base missi	
			costs	
1000000	000			referred man
b	Vocabulary	- 1 - 1 - 1 -		
	confused	concentrate	intense	adolescents
j	jaws	blank	apparently	addictive
	habit	block	permanently	relieve
1.	The teeth are in t	he upper and l	ower	- Control of the Control
2.	The	summ	er heat of the Arabian	Desert can be very
	dangerous if you	're not careful.		
3.	A car accident can traffic on a highway.			ghway.
4.	David was about the date, so he missed the meeting			missed the meeting.
		THE RESERVE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN	when you are tryi	
i	at the same time.		reference of the state of	THE RESERVE

6. An immigrant plans to	stay in a new country
7. The professor seems to l	be very busy, he has a lot of
work to do.	
8 are	e not children, but they are not grown up either.
9. Smoking is	, so it's better not to even start smoking.
C Vocabulary Review	v: Definitions
Match the words with the def	initions.
1. melt	a. middle
2. mid-	b. soreness
3. strip	c. fingerprint
4. export	d. reasonable
5. pain	e. with no moving parts
6. inexhaustible	f. change from a solid to a liquid
7. solid-state	g. not able to be seen through
8. source	h. because
9. transparent	i. long, thin piece
10. boundary	j. place
11. since	k. sell to other countries
12. position	l. not able to be used up
13. astonishing	m. place something comes from
	n. border
	o. surprising
True/False/Not Eno	ugh Information
1. We spend about	t a third of our lives sleeping.
•	w understand nearly everything about sleep.
	mes before the REM stage.
4. After the three s	stages of NREM, REM lasts the rest of the night.
	uring the REM stage, but the brain is normally
blank the rest of	the time.
6. A dream about a	an unhappy event can change your heartbeat.

- 7. Nightmares occur early, when dreams are short. 8. Sleep apnea is the cause of some snoring. 9. Five or six hours of sleep is enough for some people. ■ 10. The best thing to do when you have trouble sleeping is to take sleeping pills.

Comprehension Questions

- 1. How have researchers learned about sleep?
- 2. What does REM mean?
- 3. How do dreams change as the sleep period continues?
- 4. Can sleepwalking be dangerous? Give a reason for your answer.
- 5. Why do some people grind their teeth while they sleep?
- 6. How can sleep apnea cause brain damage?
- 7. Name three things that can keep you awake.
- 8. How does a problem keep you from sleeping?



Main Idea

Find or write a sentence for the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

- 1. Paragraph 3 (lines 12–21)
- 2. Paragraph 4 (lines 22–26)
- 3. Paragraph 6 (lines 36–41)
- 4. Paragraph 11 (lines 69–74)



Scanning

Write short answers for these questions and the line numbers on which you found the answers.

- 1. In what stage of NREM sleep can a sudden noise wake you up?
- 2. Why do people snore?
- 3. Why is it a bad idea to take sleeping pills?
- 4. How many REM periods of dreaming do people normally have?
- 5. What did some people believe about dreams?
- 6. What should you do if you can't sleep because you are thinking about an exciting event the next day?
- 7. Is it possible to control dreams?
- 8. How many hours a day do babies sleep?





Connecting Words

Use **before**, **after**, **although**, or **since** to connect a sentence from the first column with one in the second.

- 1. Scientists don't know everything about sleep.
- 2. We shouldn't laugh about snoring.
- 3. Don't eat a heavy meal.
- 4. Go to bed and get up at about the same time.
- 5. The REM stage begins.

- a. You go to bed.
- b. It isn't really funny.
- c. The NREM stage begins.
- d. They have learned a lot in the last thirty years.
- e. This sets a rhythm in your life.



Missing Words

Write any word that is correct in each blank.

- 1. Sleep is very important _____ humans; ____ average person spends 220,000 hours of his or her lifetime sleeping.
- 2. They have learned _____ great deal ____ studying people as they sleep.
- 3. Scientists study _____ body characteristics that change ____ sleep.
- 4. NREM _____ divided ____ three stages.
- 5. You reach stage three _____ less ____ thirty minutes.
- 6. Sleep is _____ biological need, ____ your brain never really sleeps.
- 7. _____ things that were _____ your mind during _____ day are still there _____ night.
- 8. _____ times, people believed _____ dreams had magical powers _____ that they could tell _____ future.
- 9. Dreams can have _____ positive effects ____ our lives.

j Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	convert	conversion		一种设施 养品产品
2.		habit	habitual	habitually
3.	concentrate	concentration	concentrated	
4.	confuse	confusion	confused	
5.		intensity	intense	intensely
6.		adolescence	adolescent	
7.	breathe	breath breathing	breathless	breathlessly
8.		permanence	permanent	permanently
9.	loosen	looseness	loose	loosely
10.	(dis)appear	(dis)appearance	apparent	apparently

1.	You can your money into dollars at the bank.
2.	The present tense is used for actions.
3.	a. Great is necessary for the game of chess.
	b. Most of Australia's population is on the
	east coast.
4.	There was a lot of about the new class schedule, but
	now it is all cleared up and things are going smoothly. At first, the
	students were,
5.	Susan feels everything very
6.	is a difficult time for some young Americans and
	their parents.
7.	Tom spoke because he was so excited.

8.	Nora married a German ar	nd is going to live
	in Germany.	
9.	Carol	her belt because it was too tight.
10.	The plane got in an hour ag	go, but Mohammed didn't come through the
	gate,	he wasn't on it.

k Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions. Paraphrase the information as much as possible.

- 1. When and why do we dream?
- 2. If a person has trouble sleeping, what can he or she do about it?

lesson

Health Care and Epidemics



Before You Read

- 1. When you are sick, do you take medicine? Why?
- 2. How can people prevent disease?
- 3. Have you ever been in a place that was having an epidemic? What did the people do about it?

Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Some diseases are caused by **viruses**. Viruses are even smaller than bacteria, and they cause different kinds of diseases.
- 2. People can be **cruel** to victims of disease. Sometimes they take away their jobs, throw them out of their apartments, and refuse them transportation.
- 3. Some diseases spread when people touch the same dishes, towels, and furniture. You can even **pick up** a disease when you touch things in public buildings.
- 4. One disease that causes frequent, worldwide epidemics is **influenza**, or flu for short. The symptoms of influenza include a headache and sometimes a runny nose.
- 5. About half of all flu patients have a high body temperature, called a **fever**.

3 Health Care and Epidemics

(8)

Everyone suffers from disease at some time or another. However, millions of people around the world do not have good health care. Sometimes they have no money to pay for medical treatment. Sometimes they

- 5 have money, but there is no doctor. Sometimes the doctor does not know how to treat the disease, and sometimes there is no treatment. Some people are afraid of doctors. When these conditions are present in large population centers, **epidemics** can start.
- Epidemics can change history. Exploration and wars cause different groups of people to come into contact with

each other. They carry strange diseases to each other. For example, when the Europeans first came to North and South America, they brought diseases with them that killed about 95% of the Native American population.

People have all kinds of ideas about how to prevent and treat diseases. Some people think that if you eat lots of onions or garlic, you won't get sick. Others say that you should take huge amounts of vitamins. Scientific experiments have not proved most of these theories. However, people still spend millions of dollars on vitamins and other probably useless treatments or preventatives. Some people want antibiotics whenever they get sick. Some antibiotics are very expensive. Much of this money is wasted because some diseases are caused by viruses. Viruses are even smaller than bacteria, and they cause different kinds of diseases. Antibiotics are useless against viruses.

People are afraid of many diseases. Because of their fear, people can be **cruel** to victims of disease. Sometimes they **fire** victims from their jobs, throw them out of their apartments, and refuse them transportation **services**. In the epidemics of **plague** a few hundred years ago, people simply covered the doors and windows of the victims' houses and left them inside to die, all in an **effort** to

protect themselves from getting sick.

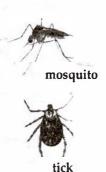
Doctors know how most epidemic diseases spread. Some, like **tuberculosis**, are spread when people **sneeze** and **cough**. The explosive cough or sneeze sends the bacteria shooting out into the air. Then they enter the mouth or nose of anyone nearby.

Others are spread through human contact. When you are sick and blow your nose, you get viruses or bacteria on your hands. Then you touch another

45 person's hand, and when that person touches his or her mouth, nose, or eyes, the disease enters the body. Some diseases spread when people touch the same dishes, towels, and furniture. You can even pick up a disease when you touch things in public buildings. Other

50 diseases are spread through insects, such as flies,

a very serious disease carried by insects



mosquitoes, and ticks.

One disease that causes frequent, worldwide epidemics is **influenza**, or flu for short. The symptoms of influenza include a headache and sometimes a runny nose. Some victims get sick to their stomach. These symptoms are similar to the symptoms of other, milder diseases. About half of all flu patients also have a high body temperature, called a **fever**. Influenza can be a very serious disease, especially for **pregnant** women, people over 65, and people already suffering from another disease such as a heart problem. Flu is very contagious.

Sometimes medicine can relieve the symptoms of a disease. That is, it can make people cough less, make headaches less intense, and stop noses from running for a while. However, medicine can't always cure a disease. So far, there is no cure for many diseases and no medicine to prevent them. People have to try to prevent them in other ways.

One person catches the flu from another person; it doesn't begin inside the body as heart disease does.

Some diseases can be prevented by **vaccination**. A liquid vaccine is **injected** into the arm or taken by mouth, and the person is then safe from catching that disease. Other diseases can be prevented by good health habits, such as drinking only clean water, **boiling** water that might carry disease, and washing the hands often.

Epidemics usually start in areas of large population. Poor people in big cities who live crowded together in <u>miserable</u> conditions have the most health problems.

They often have the least education about disease prevention. If they know what to do, they often do not have the money to do it. For example, it is difficult for a person who has no electricity to refrigerate food or boil drinking water. With no money, the person can't even buy soap to wash his or her hands.

Disease prevention costs much less than disease treatment. It seems completely illogical, but some countries like the United States spend much more health-care money on treatment for diseases than on programs to prevent disease in the first place. Most doctors and other hospital workers stay in their **institutions**. Only a



very bad; inferior

few doctors go out into the streets of the poor areas to educate people. Only a few doctors and some nurses vaccinate people and **supervise** them to make sure they take their medicine. Many people who help poor people with their health problems are volunteers.

How can you use all this information for your own good health? When someone you know becomes ill, try to avoid physical contact with that person. If you get sick yourself, keep your towel and dishes separate from everyone else's. Try not to touch things that belong to others. Don't touch other people, and don't shake hands. Explain why, however; you don't want people to think you are impolite. Wash your hands often if you are ill or if anyone around you is ill.

Researchers continue searching for a way to cure or prevent epidemic diseases. **Meanwhile**, it is worth the money for governments to provide preventive health care for all of their people. Preventing epidemics is much cheaper than stopping them.

a Vocabulary

	cough	epidemics	cruel	institutions
	meanwhile	picked up	sneeze	miserable
	plague	antibiotics	vaccinations	influenza
1.		is also called flu	Augune 65	
2.	Some diseases are	e spread when peop	le	
	and			
3.	When you have a headache, you probably feel			
4.	Babies should receive to prevent common childhood			
	diseases. Then th	ey won't catch these	diseases.	
5.	Governments sho	ould provide health	care	, they
	should give mone	ey for new research	into the causes of	disease.
6.		kill thousands, e	even millions, of j	people worldwide.

7.	Hospitals and u	niversities are e	xamples of		
8.	It is very	t	o put a sick person out	of his or her house	
	into the street to	live.			
9.	The	epide:	mics killed half the pop	oulation.	
10.	If you take		too often, they will be	come ineffective.	
11.	She thinks she _		the flu on the long	flight to Europe.	
b	Vocabulary	www.irL	anguage.com		
	fever	service	tuberculosis	supervise	
	fire	effort	viruses	injected	
	pregnant	boil	mosquitoes	ticks	
1.	When your temp	erature is above	e normal, you have a $_$		
2.	. Your boss can't you without a good reason.				
3.	Ms. Davis is She is going to have a baby in May.				
4.	. The train in my area is very good. There's a train				
	every fifteen mir				
5.	. Diseases caused by cannot be cured with antibiotics.				
6.	Some vaccines ar	е	into the arm; o	thers are taken	
	by mouth.				
7.	She didn't make	any	to get a good	l grade. She didn't	
	study or even con	me to class. No	wonder she failed.		
8.	If you	an e	gg for ten minutes, it w	rill become hard.	
9.	There were only	two adults to $_$	thi	rty children on	
	the trip.				
10.	Diseases carried	by	and	enter	
	the victim's blood	d through the b	ites of these insects.		
11.		enters the b	oody when the victim b	reathes the air	
	coughed out by a	sick person.			

C Vocabulary Review

	raw materials	attacked	dawn	tide
	hammer	intensely	apparent	pounded
	swell	arteries	forehead	recurring
1.	Blood is carried from	the heart throu	gh the	value gvo
2.	If you hit your thumb	with a	, tł	ne thumb will
	probably	up.		
3.	Sometimes the sky is:	red at		
4.	Tom got hit on the		with the ball	
5.	The army	at da	wn to surprise tl	ne enemy.
6.	Rita has a	pain	n the stomach.	It comes and goes.
7.	The waves move high	er up on the be	ach as the	
	comes in.			
8.	Iron and cotton are			
9.	Dan	on the table	e to get everyon	e's attention.
10.	Everyone in the room	was studying t	he picture	
	when the door opened	d. No one even	noticed that son	neone came in.
11.	It's	_ to me that y	ou didn't read tl	ne article. You don't
	even know what it's a	bout.		

d Multiple Choice

1. Coughing is a _____ of tuberculosis. a. miserable b. epidemic c. symptom 2. Medicine can _____ a disease. a. cure b. relieve the symptoms of c. prevent 3. Without the Europeans, North and South America would probably have _____. a. more Native Americans b. no diseases c. no wars 4. Which one of these sentences is *not* true? a. Antibiotics can be expensive. b. Antibiotics have saved the lives of many sick people. c. Antibiotics will help cure diseases caused by viruses. 5. _____ prevent some diseases. a. There is no vaccine to b. You can have a vaccine injected into your arm to c. both a and b 6. Tuberculosis spreads ______. a. by hand contact b. when people cough and sneeze c. when people don't eat garlic 7. The best way to avoid epidemics is to ____ a. lock sick people up inside their houses b. take lots of vitamins

c. provide health care for people in crowded cities



Comprehension Questions

- 1. Name the symptoms of influenza.
- 2. What does medicine do for diseases?
- 3. Is it worth the expense to take extra vitamins?
- 4. How do epidemics spread?
- 5. How can epidemics change history?
- 6. Do you think you should or should not shake hands with someone who is ill? Why?
- 7. Why do poor people in big cities have the most health problems?
- 8. Why do people who live in the city have more health problems than people who live in the country (outside of cities)?
- 9. How can humans prevent diseases from becoming epidemics?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?

- 1. Paragraph 2 (lines 10–15)
- 2. Paragraph 4 (lines 29–36)
- 3. Paragraph 6 (lines 42–51)
- 4. Paragraph 9 (lines 71–76)



Cause and Effect

Write the effect for each of these causes.

Cause	Effect
1. A virus enters the body.	
2. People take medicine.	
3. A person with tuberculosis coughs.	1 125-501 127 11 -
4. A vaccine is injected into the body.	
5. A student drinks from a sick roommate's glass.	



Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		(im)politeness	(im)polite	(im)politely
2.		cruelty	cruel	cruelly
3.	relieve	relief	relieved	
4.	volunteer	volunteer	(in)voluntary	(in)voluntarily
5.	inject	injection		
6.		pregnancy	pregnant	
7.		contagion	contagious	contagiously
8.	lengthen	length	long	
9.	reason	reason	(un)reasonable	(un)reasonably

1.	The idea of is different from one country to another.
2.	It is to hit a very old or sick person.
3.	Mary felt when she found out her daughter had
	arrived safely at her grandparents' home.
4.	Mark did not go into the army He went because it is
	the law that all young men must serve in the army.
5.	Children don't like to have
6.	A human lasts nine months.
7.	Heart trouble is not
8.	In the spring, the days start to
9.	Mehdi was very angry. We tried to with him, but he
	was completely and wouldn't listen at all.

Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

a	se the correct very form.
	grow out of = stop doing or feeling (something) as one becomes older get out of = avoid doing show up = appear; arrive put off = delay read up on = get facts and information on (a subject) by reading
1.	Hiroko always tries to talking in front of the class
	because she doesn't like to do it.
2.	Tom had planned to go to the shopping center today, but he
	it until the weekend because
	he's so busy.
3.	Children sleepwalking when they
	become adolescents.
4.	Marge is going to photovoltaic cells because she
	wants to know more about them.
5.	Bob didn't for the party until almost midnight.
j Pu	Articles t articles in the blanks if they are needed.
v	Millions of people around world do not have good
	health care.
2.	Sometimes doctor does not know how to treat disease, and
	sometimes there is no treatment.
3.	people have all kinds of ideas about how to prevent and
	treat diseases.
4.	explosive cough or sneeze sends bacteria shooting out into
	air.
5.	Then they enter mouth or nose of anyone nearby.
	Some diseases spread when people touch same
	dishes, towels, and furniture.
) L	56
	AT)

7.	Some countries like United States spend much more health-care
	money on treatment for diseases than on programs to prevent
	disease in first place.



Summarizing

Summarize paragraph 3, lines 16–28. Use your own words to tell the main idea in no more than three or four sentences.



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are a health-care worker who is going into a poor area of a big city. You have seen several cases of tuberculosis and influenza this month. You are going to try to prevent an epidemic among the people in this area. What will you say to the people?
- 2. A government official in your country has asked you for your suggestions about improving health care. What will you say to the official?

lesson

4

Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers



Before You Read

- 1. Based on the title of this lesson, what do you think the reading is about?
- 2. What do you think this doctor is holding up?
- 3. What are some examples of traditional and modern medicine?



Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. A man named Hippocrates **concluded** that people became sick for natural reasons, not because the gods were angry. He also believed that there was a connection between diet and health.
- 2. During the time of Hippocrates, doctors **prescribed** massage, special diets, and baths as medical treatments for their patients.
- 3. In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, many **remarkable** discoveries were made in medicine. These discoveries saved the lives of millions of people around the world.
- 4. Hospitals now have large computers and machines that help doctors diagnose medical problems.

Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers



What do lasers, <u>leeches</u>, tree bark, and old bread have a type of worm in common? They are all things that people use to make medicine or to help sick people feel better. Throughout history, people have searched for ways to live healthier

that sucks, or takes in, blood

- 5 and better lives. As early as 8000 B.C., people were experimenting with methods of helping sick people. Today, we have very modern technology, yet we continue to look for ways to improve medicine and our system of health care.
- The history of medicine extends back thousands of years. We know that, from the earliest times, people used plants as medicine. Scientists have also found evidence that people experimented with <u>surgery</u> 10,000 years ago.

opening up the body to fix it People haven't always gone to doctors to get medical

help. In Egypt around 3000 B.C., people went to their

Egyptians believed that the gods made people sick when they were angry with them. Common remedies in Egypt at this time included garlic and onions to prevent epidemics and moldy bread to heal wounds. Around this time, however, people in Egypt were also learning more about sanitation.

Archaeologists there have found the ruins of elaborate bathrooms and sewerage systems.

In Greece in 410 B.C., a man named Hippocrates concluded that people became sick for natural reasons, not because the gods were angry. He also believed that there was a connection between diet and health.

During his time, doctors prescribed massage, special diets, and baths as medical treatments for their patients.

In China and other Asian countries, doctors developed acupuncture as a method of treating sickness and pain. Acupuncture uses **needles** to help the human body fight pain and disease. Doctors have used this method for thousands of years, and many still use it today.

During the Middle Ages (400–1500 A.D.), a few medical schools and hospitals opened in Europe. At this time, however, doctors considered themselves to be primarily observers of patients. For them, surgery was a menial task, something a barber should do. One

common medical treatment during the Middle Ages was the use of leeches to remove "bad blood" from people. Doctors thought this "bloodletting" was good for many illnesses. Unfortunately, many plagues spread through

Europe at that time. Doctors could not cure these diseases, and one quarter of the population of Europe died. It didn't help that, in the Middle Ages, many people believed that bathing could be <u>fatal</u>. It wasn't uncommon for people to bathe just once a year!

After the invention of the printing press in the midfifteenth century, books on health and medicine became available. Leonardo da Vinci's **drawings** of the human body, including all the muscles, helped doctors tremendously. Understanding the human body helped doctors treat sicknesses and make people feel better. having a fungus

ways to keep things clean and germ-free for the removal of waste

low-skill

deadly; causing death



In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, many remarkable discoveries were made in medicine. These discoveries saved the lives of millions of people around the world. For example, in 1895, a German doctor named Roentgen developed the X-ray machine. In 1928, the English scientist Sir Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin, the first antibiotic. Fleming discovered penicillin growing in mold on an old piece of bread!

Great advances in the technology of medicine
continue to be made. Today, doctors can save people's
lives by giving them a new heart or a new **kidney**.
Hospitals now have large computers and machines that help doctors **diagnose** medical problems.

Although modern medicine is making many new treatments possible, doctors are learning that some of the old ways are useful too. For example, doctors are now paying more attention to the connection between diet and health. Even the leech has found a place in modern medicine. In certain kinds of surgery, up-to-date surgeons are using leeches to prevent a patient's

arteries from getting plugged up.

Some people believe that nature has all of the cures for human problems. Others believe that technology is more helpful. It just might be that, together, tradition and technology will help people everywhere live better and healthier lives.



Vocabulary

	improve	evidence	surgery	sanitation concluded
	leech	elaborate	sewerage	describe
	needle	menial	fatal	drawing
1.	They have an _		garden behind tl	neir house. They mus
	work on it for he	ours every day.		
2.	After carefully s	tudying the X-r	ay of his arm, the do	octors
		that it was	sn't broken.	
3.	The doctors gav	e the patient so	mething to make hin	n sleep
	during			
4.	The	Depar	rtment in our city has	s to inspect all
	restaurants to m			
5.	During the bad	storm, all the $_$	f	rom the city went
	right into the riv	ver.		
6.	A doctor uses a		when she gives	s you an injection.
7.	When he walked	d out of the lake	e, there was a	on
	his leg.			
8.	I don't mind doi	ing	jobs, becaus	se I can think about
	other things at tl	ne same time.		
9.	He said that his	neighbor stole ł	nis boat, but he didn'	t have any
		to prove it		-1-1-1-
10.	You will probabl	ly feel better if y	ou	your diet.

17 11/2/201	
100 1000	
770	
20 C	
334 6 18	
2 60 6	
128 - 12	
1613 - 1873	
3041001410	
20,000	

Vocabulary

						fatal improvement	
	conclus	ion	needle		surgeon		
1.	If you le	eave the bre	ead out fo	or too long,	it will get		
2.	The doo	ctors needed	d several	X-rays befo	ore they could .		9
	his prob	olem.					
3.	Luckily	everyone in	n the car	was wearir	ig a seatbelt. O	therwise, it might	
	have be	en a		accid	ent.		
4.	I can't u	inderstand	your dire	ctions. Cou	ıld you	me	
	a map?						
5.	Most pe	ople have t	wo		located in	their lower back.	
6.	It's		to h	nandle food	l without first v	vashing your hands	
7.	At the _			of the mov	ie, everyone die	ed.	
8.	The pati	ient made g	reat		in the we	ek after surgery.	
26							
i Sta	Voca	abulary Re	eview: Sy	nonyms	_		
λ <i>Λ</i> ,	atch the u	vords that me	oan the sai	mo	=		
		,	a. b				
		miserable					
	3.			teenager			
		a great dea		•			
		meanwhile		vision			
		nightmare		forever	- Car		
		confused	O	at the sam	e time		
		adolescent		location			
		permanen	•	painful			
		sore	ŕ	unhappy		*	
		dawn		empty			
	12.	position		sunrise			
				mixed up			
			n.	bad dream	l		

True/False/No Information

1. Surgery is a very recent type of medical treatment. 2. Doctors were very busy in ancient Egypt. _____ 3. People weren't interested in cleanliness until the nineteenth century. 4. Leeches have always been used to help patients. _____ 5. Acupuncture was not popular in Europe during the Middle Ages. 6. Leonardo da Vinci was a medical doctor. 7. The X-ray machine was developed before the discovery of penicillin. 8. An X-ray machine can help doctors diagnose a broken bone. 9. There is no good reason for doctors to study cures and treatments



Comprehension Questions

1. When did doctors first do surgery?

of the past.

2. Why did Egyptians go to their priests for medical help instead of to their doctors?

____ 10. The first antibiotic was found growing on bread.

- 3. What was medical care like in ancient Egypt?
- 4. Compare the medical care in Egypt in 3000 B.C. and in Greece in 410 B.C.
- 5. What is acupuncture?
- 6. What was unusual about a doctor's work in the Middle Ages in Europe?
- 7. What effect did the invention of the printing press have on medical care?
- 8. What do you think is one of the most remarkable discoveries in medicine? Why?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?

- 1. Paragraph 2 (lines 10–13)
- 2. Paragraph 5 (lines 31–35)
- 3. Paragraph 7 (lines 50–55)



Prepositions

Put the right preposition in e	ach blank.			
1. What do lasers, leeches,	, tree bark,	and old bread l	nave com	ımon?
2. Throughout history, peo	ople have s	earched	ways to live hea	althier
and better lives.				
3. In China and other Asia	ın countries	s, doctors devel	oped acupunctu	re
a method	_ treating s	ickness and pa	in.	
4. Doctors have used this	method	thousands	of years.	
5. After the invention	the prin	nting press	the mid-fifte	enth
century, books h	nealth and r	nedicine becam	ie available.	
6. Great advances	the technol	ogy me	dicine continue	to
be made.				
7. Today, doctors can save	people's li	ves givi	ng them a new h	neart.
Make a compound word by jo second column. More than on these compounds are also write.	ining a word ne answer is	d from the first co	al of the words. So	
1. bi	reak a.	in		
2. st	and b.	down		
3. w	ork c.	work		
4. cł	neck d.	mate		
5. st	ın e.	rise		
6. ho	ome f.	night		
7. sl	eep g.	by	4	
8. or	ut h.	grow		
9. lif	fe i.	walk		
10. ov	ver j.	way		
11. ai	r k.	time		
12. ro	oom l.	out		



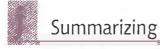
$www. ir Language. {\tt com}$

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	improve	improvement		
2.		evidence	evident	evidently
3.		sanitation	(un)sanitary	(un)sanitarily
4.	elaborate	elaboration	elaborate	elaborately
5.		similarity	(dis)similar	(dis)similarly
6.	prescribe	prescription		
7.	medicate	medicine	medical	medically
8.		fatality	fatal	fatally
9.	diagnose	diagnosis	diagnostic	diagnostically

1.	There has been a tremendous in surgical methods
	over the past century.
2.	The newspaper gave a great description of the event
	someone from the newspaper saw the whole thing.
3.	Everything in the operating room must be
4.	I don't understand your explanation. Could you
	please?
5.	What is the between snow and hail?
6.	What did the doctor for your headache? Did he give
	you a?
7.	Jane wants to go to college and become a doctor.
8.	There were two in yesterday's car accident on
	Route 34.

9. She went to three different doctors to get a _



www.irLanguage.com

Write a summary of the text for this lesson. Write only the most important information, using three to five sentences.



Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

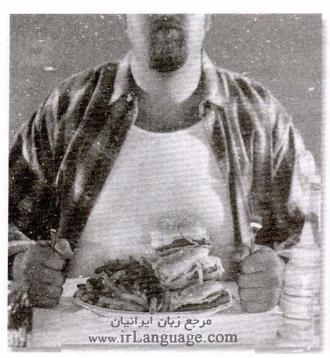
- 1. What would you like and not like about being a doctor during the Middle Ages in Europe?
- 2. Do you think it's important to study the history of medicine? Why or why not?

مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com



lesson 5

Cholesterol and Heart Disease





Before You Read

- 1. Do you have a healthy diet? Why do you think so?
- 2. What effect can exercise have on heart disease?
- 3. Is it difficult or easy to change your lifestyle? Why?





Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

- 1. Some people say that heart disease is not really a serious problem. They think the danger of heart disease is **exaggerated**.
- 2. A natural substance in the blood, **cholesterol** comes from the liver.
- 3. **Angiograms** are X-rays of the heart arteries.
- 4. People often **complain** about low-fat diets. They say that the food doesn't taste good.
- 5. Doctors can use a special camera to watch a person's blood circulating through the arteries.

5 Cholesterol and Heart Disease

(8)

Do you know your **cholesterol** level? A high level of cholesterol in the blood is an important **risk factor** for heart disease, so it's a good idea to know your cholesterol level.

Some people say that the danger of heart disease is exaggerated. However, heart disease is a main cause of death in developed countries. Every year, more than 1 million Americans have heart attacks, and half of them die. People with heart disease suffer chest pains that make simple activities, such as walking, shaving, or taking a shower, difficult.

Research has proven that cholesterol levels are connected with heart disease. One project in Massachusetts has studied the same group of fifteen men and women since 1948. The researchers have found

said to be more than it is



that the people who have high levels of cholesterol have more heart attacks.

A natural **substance** in the blood, cholesterol comes from the liver. The amount of cholesterol is affected 20 by diet and by physical qualities people inherit from their parents. One kind of cholesterol sticks fat to the wails of arteries, making the arteries smaller and finally blocking them. It produces a condition called "hardening of the arteries," which causes heart attacks.

25 With tiny cameras, doctors can see blood circulating through the heart valves. Angiograms are X-rays of the heart arteries. They show fat deposits and blockages caused by high cholesterol.

Heart disease begins in children as young as 3 years 30 old. It occurs earlier in boys than in girls. Nearly half of teenagers have some fat deposits on their artery walls. Heart disease develops faster if you have a high cholesterol leve! and you also smoke.

What is a safe level of cholesterol? Adults have a 35 high risk of heart attack if their cholesterol level is above 240 milligrams per deciliter of blood. Below 200 is better. In the Massachusetts study, no one with a cholesterol level below 150 has ever had a heart attack. However, about half of American adults have 40 cholesterol levels above 200.

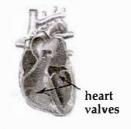
To lower your cholesterol level, you must change your eating habits. Anything that comes from an animal is high in fat and high in cholesterol. The American Heart Association National Cholesterol Education

45 Program says that fat should be no more than 30% of your diet. Blood cholesterol levels start to fall after two to three weeks of following a low-cholesterol, low-fat diet. Dietary changes alone can result in a 10% <u>reduction</u> of the average person's cholesterol level.

50 <u>Aerobic</u> exercise helps, too. Artery blockage can be reduced by as much as 40% through changes in diet and amount of exercise.

We should educate everyone, including children in elementary schools, about the danger of cholesterol. We 55 should teach them responsibility for their health

get



decrease

increasing oxygen intake (for example, walking, running, and swimming are aerobic exercise)



through classes in nutrition and aerobic exercise. For example, the smart **snack** is fruit. Children should be served fruit in the school cafeteria, along with low-fat meals. Schools should send **recipes** home with children.

Parents should include children in planning and preparing meals and shopping for food.

instructions for cooking

something small

that can be eaten

Adults, including people over the age of 65, can lower their cholesterol by 30 or 40%. It is never too late to change. One man began his health program when he was 73. By the time he was 77, he had lowered his arterial blockage from 50% to 13% and his cholesterol from 320 to 145 without drugs. He went on a vegetarian diet with only 10% fat and followed programs to reduce stress and get more exercise.

70 A low-cholesterol diet that cuts out most animal products and high-fat vegetables may be <u>unfamiliar</u> to people. The Heart Association says to use no added fat of any kind. Don't fry food in oil. Cook it in water, vinegar, or vegetable water. Learn about grains and vegetables. Avoid egg yolks (the yellow part of the egg)

strange; unknown

vegetables. Avoid egg yolks (the yellow part of the egg). Eat potatoes, beans, low-fat vegetables, and fruit. People often <u>complain</u> about low-fat diets before they have had time to get used to them. Food can taste good without cream, butter, and salt. You can use olive oil, mustard, fresh herbs, or yogurt instead.

say they don't like

A new diet can cause general **anxiety**, when people feel worried and nervous about what is going to happen. They must learn to <u>deal with</u> the changes in their lives. Sometimes major changes in diet or lifestyle are easier than minor ones because the results are bigger and occur faster. Fast results **encourage** us.

cope with

How can you control the amount of fat in your diet if you eat in restaurants? Restaurants should provide healthy meals that are low in fat, salt, and cholesterol. A diet is a <u>personal</u> thing. Restaurant owners should not make customers feel embarrassed because they want to follow a diet that is good for them. Restaurant owners must learn to give equal service to customers on a healthy diet. Some restaurants have items on the menu marked with a heart to show that they are low in fat,

private; about oneself

cholesterol, salt, and/or sugar. A few restaurants serve only these items.

Education programs, such as the American Heart Association National Cholesterol Education Program, cost money but can bring results. In 1983, only 35% of the American public knew their cholesterol levels. By 2000, 60% of the people had had theirs checked.

People feel better if they lower their cholesterol through diet. Healthy people are more **confident**. They are more **attractive** to themselves, as well as to others. Their friends **stare** at them because they look so healthy.

We can prevent heart disease by living a healthful lifestyle and eating the right kind of diet. If people don't do this, two out of three men and women in the United States will eventually get heart disease.

pretty; handsome look intensely



Vocabulary

	confidence	anxiety	stare	herbs
	aerobic	risk	encouraged	valve
	unfamiliar	inherited	personal	snack
1.	John's parents	him t	o stay in school, even	though his
	grades were not very	good.		
2.	6	exercise is good for	the heart.	
3.	Is it impolite to ask so	meone	questions?	
4.	Students often suffer f	rom	before an exam	
5.	i	mprove the taste of	food.	
6.	Some people are	wit	h a low-fat diet.	
7.	Mark	red hair from l	nis mother.	
8.	It is impolite to	at pe	ople.	
9.	If you drive carelessly,	you take a		
10.	I'm hungry now, but i	t's two hours until o	linner. I think I'll have	2
	a			

	so t	hat th	e water will	flow free	ely through
	yourself, you hav	/e		in y	yourself.
Vocabulary					
	reduction		deposit	an	
Many television s	tars are		•		
	occurs natura	lly in	the blood.		
A	in how muc	ch fat	you eat migh	t make	
you healthier.					
Please give me a c	copy of the		for	that deli	cious soup.
•					_
Tom said that he e		eek, b	ut he is really	paid or	nly \$800.
The doctor wants	my mother to hav	ve an			to see if her
	,				
Ali always	tha	t he h	as too much	homew	ork.
•					
it isn't.					/ 240
	s were reading, th	e teac	her		around
	the pipes. If you are sure of Vocabulary factor attractive exaggerated Many television s A you healthier. Please give me a concept of the difficult to Smoking is a and lungs. Tom said that he end the The doctor wants arteries are blocked Ali always There's a stranged it isn't. While the students	Vocabulary factor circulated attractive reduction exaggerated cholesterol Many television stars are occurs natura A in how much you healthier. Please give me a copy of the Please your be lit is difficult to and lungs. Tom said that he earned \$1,000 a well he The doctor wants my mother to have arteries are blocked. Ali always that There's a strange it isn't.	Vocabulary factor circulated attractive reduction exaggerated cholesterol Many television stars are occurs naturally in A in how much fat you healthier. Please give me a copy of the your books i It is difficult to a ch Smoking is a in man and lungs. Tom said that he earned \$1,000 a week, b He The doctor wants my mother to have an arteries are blocked. Ali always that he had the earned strange on it isn't. While the students were reading, the teach	the pipes. If you are sure of yourself, you have	Vocabulary factor circulated deal with coattractive reduction deposit an exaggerated cholesterol recipe su Many television stars are occurs naturally in the blood. A in how much fat you eat might make you healthier. Please give me a copy of the for that deliphease your books in the box at the back It is difficult to a child who doesn't beha Smoking is a in many diseases of the heat and lungs. Tom said that he earned \$1,000 a week, but he is really paid on the The doctor wants my mother to have an arteries are blocked. Ali always that he has too much homeworthere's a strange on the table. It looks like it isn't. While the students were reading, the teacher in the content of the point of the

Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match the words with the definitions.

____ 7. elaborate

- _____ 1. tremendously a. length of time _____ 2. period b. at the same time _____ 3. habit c. stage _____ 4. meanwhile d. germ free _____ 5. fever
- e. grind f. something that supports a statement _____ 6. pregnant
- g. watch ____ 8. evidence h. very detailed
- _____ 9. sanitary i. anxious _____ 10. solar i. usual action
 - ____ 11. observe k. high body temperature
 - l. of the sun m. very much
 - n. going to become a mother

True/False/Not Enough Information

- _____ 1. About 500,000 Americans die each year from heart disease.
- 2. More than twice as many people had their blood cholesterol levels checked in 2000 as in 1983.
- _____ 3. Smoking can be a risk factor for heart disease.
- 4. No direct relationship has been proven between high cholesterol levels and heart attacks.
- 5. Girls have no risk of heart disease.
- _____ 6. Low-fat diets always taste bad.
- 7. Children should learn more responsibility for eating healthful food.
- 8. People usually feel good about going on a new diet.
- 9. It can be easier to change our diet a lot than to change it a little.
- _____ 10. Old people shouldn't bother to change their eating habits because it's too late for it to do them any good.



Comprehension Questions

- 1. What are some symptoms of heart disease?
- 2. What is hardening of the arteries? How is it connected with high cholesterol?
- 3. Why are angiograms useful?
- 4. At what age does heart disease start?
- 5. What level of cholesterol is believed to be safe?
- 6. How long does it take for cholesterol levels to start to drop?
- 7. How can parents help teach children healthy eating habits?
- 8. What are some ways to reduce fat in your diet?



Main Idea

What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?

- 1. Paragraph 4 (lines 18-28)
- 2. Paragraph 6 (lines 34-40)
- 3. Paragraph 9 (lines 62–69)



Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		anxiety	anxious	anxiously
2.	encourage	encouragement	encouraged	encouragingly
3.	discourage	discouragement	discouraged	discouragingly
4.		stress	stressful	stressfully
5.	personalize	person	personal	personally
6.		stupidity	stupid	stupidly
7.	attract	attraction	(un)attractive	(un)attractively
8.	inherit	inheritance	inherited	
9.	familiarize	familiarity	(un)familiar	familiarly
10.	suggest	suggestion	suggested	
11.	complain	complaint		complainingly
12.	exaggerate	exaggeration	exaggerated	exaggeratedly
13.	serve	service		

1.	The students waited to hear the results of the test.
2.	Marie was by the results of her physical exam after a
	long illness.
3.	Michael felt when he wasn't accepted at the
	university that was his first choice.
4.	Joan felt a lot of when she stood before the class and
	began her speech.
5.	, I don't mind if people use their cell phones on
	the train.
5.	Marie felt because she did the exercise without
	reading the directions and did it all wrong.

7.	Honey flies. Ants also are
	by honey.
8.	Tom a small business and some money from his
	father when his father died. His friend received a large
	from his favorite uncle.
9.	If you yourself with the language center before the
	first day of classes, you will not get confused about where you should go.
10.	I that we take an exercise class this month. That's a
	good
11.	If you have any about the television set you bought,
	take it back to the store.
12.	To say that you couldn't get to sleep at all last night is an
	You are
13.	A waiter food in a restaurant.
- 500	
h	Irregular Verbs

Learn these verbs. Then put the right verb forms in the blanks in the sentences below. Use the first verb in the first sentence, and so on.

	Simple	Past	Past Participle	
1.	tear	tore	torn	
2.	light	lit or lighted	lit or lighted	
3.	lie	lay	lain	
4.	swell	swelled	swollen	
5.	grind	ground	ground	
6.	draw	drew	drawn	
7.	stick	stuck	stuck	
8.	deal	dealt	dealt	
1	A 1:	L	au marii blassa	
1.	Alice	h	er new blouse.	
2.	Dan	a f	fire in the living room fi	replace.
3.	In some cou	untries, it is the cu	astom to	down for a rest
	in the midd	lle of the day.		

4. Ms. Baxter's hand is	because she shut it in the
car door.	
5. Mr. Thomas	some fresh coffee beans and made coffee.
6. The children	_ a picture of a big animal on the wall
outside their school.	
7. The roadrunner	out its head when it runs.
8. Mr. Nevins is a car dealer. He	in new and used cars.
Two-Word Verbs: Review	_
1. Sixteen people showed	for volleyball practice.
2. Never put	until tomorrow what you can do today.
3. What time does your plane get	?
	in the city or in the country?
5. When he wrote the class list, the	e teacher left
one student.	
6. Do you dress	for dinner at an expensive restaurant?
7. Look! The	re's a hole in the sidewalk.
8. I have to read	a subject for
my speech.	
9. Kim had a	warm jacket so I knew it was cold outside.
10. The Bakers have to buy new sho	oes for their daughter. She grew
	her old ones.
11. We tried to get	helping our
cousin, but we had to do it.	
Context Clues	
Each of the words in bold has more that meaning of the word as it is used in the	n one meaning. Circle the letter of the best sentence.
1. Mr. Becker has worked in the fiel a. area of specialization	d of computer science for ten years.

b. place where animals or plants are raised

c. place where baseball is played

- 2. Carolyn is often late for class because she has to walk **so far** from her apartment.
 - a. until now
 - b. such a long distance
 - c. far enough
- 3. There are 2.2 **pounds** in a kilo.
 - a. unit of English money
 - b. hits or strikes
 - c. unit of weight
- 4. Trappers sometimes **cure** the skins of the animals they catch before they sell the skins.
 - a. dry and prepare for use
 - b. make better
 - c. a kind of medicine
- 5. The **current** value of gold is \$321 an ounce.
 - a. movement of electricity
 - b. at this time
 - c. movement of a stream of water in the ocean
- 6. I know that it isn't so.
 - a. very
 - b. therefore
 - c. true
- 7. Ali and Muhammed live in a large apartment **complex** near the university.
 - a. related group of buildings
 - b. complicated
 - c. anxiety



Summarizing

Write a summary of the text for this lesson. Write only the important information, using three to five sentences.

Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

- 1. You are going to start an educational program about heart disease in your area. How will you do this?
- 2. Your doctor told you that you have to lower your cholesterol. Give a detailed plan of how you will follow the doctor's suggestion.

Video Highlights



Before You Watch

- 1. Discuss the questions below with your classmates.
 - a. Do you enjoy going to the doctor? Why or why not?
 - b. The word *cardio* is a medical word for *heart*. What kind of doctor is a cardiologist?
 - c. Have you seen the picture on the right before? What does it mean?
- 2. The video you are going to watch is about a man who has two jobs. Dr. Cleve Francis is a doctor and a country music performer. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of both jobs. Then complete the chart below. List as many advantages and disadvantages as you can.



	Advantages	Disadvantages
Doctor	1. good salary	1. long hours
	2.	2.
	3.	3.
Country music performer	1.	1.
	2.	2.
	3.	3.
		30.0

b As You Watch

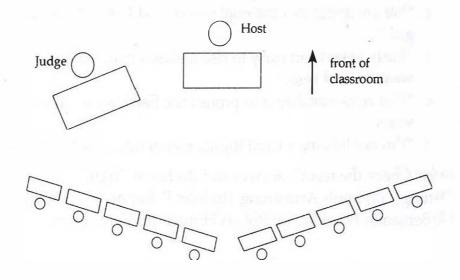
	As You Watch
	Complete these sentences about Dr. Francis's two careers.
	. Dr. Francis has spent his medical career treating patients with
2	. Now he's singing about the pains of a
	C After You Watch
1	. Watch the video again. Then read the following excerpts. What conclusion can you draw about Cleve Francis from each one? Check your choices.
	a. "Things are looking bright for Cleve Francis. The 46-year- old heart doctor is undergoing a transformation to country music performer."
	He is happy about the change.
	He is sorry to leave his career as a cardiologist.
	He believes that he is too old to make a career change.
	b. "Francis's journey into country has another trail-blazing aspect. There are few Black performers in the field."
	Dr. Francis is not unusual.
	There are not many African-American cardiologists.
	Most country music performers are not black.
2.	In the video, Dr. Francis expresses several opinions. Do you
	agree or disagree or have no opinion? Explain your responses
	to a small group of your classmates.
	a. "There is a link between music and medicine."
	☐ agree ☐ disagree ☐ no opinion
	b. "If you took away the music, books, and paintings life would
	be bare."
	agree disagree no opinion
	c. "The older you are, the better."
	agree disagree no opinion

Activity Page





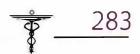
Play this game with a group of your classmates. Choose one student in the group to be the Game Host and another to be the Judge. The rest of the students will be on Team A or Team B. All students except the Host and the Judge must keep their books closed during the game.



Host: Follow these three steps to begin the game.

1. Write this list on the board:

Robert Louis Stevenson
Cleve Francis
American cardiologist and singer
Louis Armstrong
American jazz trumpeter
Benjamin Franklin
John F. Kennedy
American president
American singer
Robert Hunter
American environmentalist



2. Read this introduction aloud to the two teams:

"I am going to read a quotation aloud. One person on a team will have a chance to guess which of these people said it. If that person gets it wrong, a person on the other team gets a chance. Are you ready?"

- 3. Choose a quotation from this list. Ask Team A first, then Team B, and so on.
 - a. "All music is folk music. I haven't ever heard a horse sing a song."
 - b. "Ask not what your country can do for you, ask what you can do for your country."
 - c. "We are living in a material world, and I am a material girl."
 - d. "Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."
 - e. "Our responsibility is to protect the Earth for a million years."
 - f. "I'm not leading a Civil Rights march into country music."

Judge: Check the team's answer and declare it "right" or "wrong": (a) Louis Armstrong (b) John F. Kennedy (c) Madonna (d) Benjamin Franklin (e) Robert Hunter (f) Cleve Francis

مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com



Dictionary Page

Learning About Word Stress

Your dictionary shows which syllable in a word is stressed. The mark showing the syllable with primary (heaviest) stress in the word *influenza* is pointed out below.

in-flu-en-za / Influenza / n. [U] a contagious illness spread by viruses: Influenza killed millions in 1918, but now there is a shot that prevents it.

1. Look up these words and underline the syllable with primary stress. Practice saying the words with a partner.

Example: influenza

antibiotic	malaria
anxiety	medicine
caffeine	mosquito
cancer	nightmare
diet	resuscitation
exercise	surgery
bacteria	tuberculosis
headache	vaccination

2. Now group the words in the chart below.

Causes	Solutions	
mosquito	medicine	
	2	

Vocabulary

a

a great deal 237 aborigines 3 accident 124 active 213 actually 100 addictive 239 adjust 155 adolescents 238 adopted 13 advancements 145 advantages 145 aerobic 270 afford 70 agricultural 80 alarm 211 already 58 alternating 191 analyze 228 angiograms 270 anthropologists 155 antibiotics 248 anxiety 271 apparent 239 archaeologists architects 145 arteries 227 articles 12 as well as 80 ashore 23 aspirin 228 astonishing 190 at times 32 atmosphere 190 attacks 212 attractive 272 available 58

b

backwards 155 bacteria 170 balance 169 base 3 batteries 100 beams 145 beggar 13 belongings 32 bilingual 135 biological 210 blank 238 blind 32 blizzards 31 block 239 blurred 227 bodies 32 boiling 249 bombs 146 borders 12 borrow 134 bothers 124 boundary 200 brain 135 branches 89 broad 154 broke down 31 built 3 burst 180

C

caffeine 212
carbon dioxide 170
carpet 90
carries 114
cave 12
centers 146
characters 133

childhood 12 cholesterol 269 chosen 3 chronic 58 circulating 270 civil war 13 clear 90 clockwise 156 cluster 228 colonies 169 combined 58 commercial 59 complain 271 complex 169 concentrate 238 concluded 260 conductor 200 confident 272 confused 238 consider 169 consists of 69 converted 200 cope 180 cough 248 counterclockwise 156 crash 123 creating 170 creatures 41 crucial 58 cruel 248 crush 42 crushed 180 cylinder 42

d

dawn 211 deal with 271 debris 180

decades 23 deep (serious) 101 delays 22 demand 58 density 42 depends on 58 deposits 270 descend 42 designing 145 destruction 90 details 12 developed 59 diagnose 261 diameter 42 diet 114 dispose of 100 diversity 43 divided 134 divorce 71 domestic 80 drawings 260

e

earthquakes 146 edge 31 education 156 effect 59 efficiently 200 effort 248 elaborate 260 elements 169 emphasis 70 empty 91 enclosed 42 encourage 271 end up 100 endangering 32 epicenter 178 epidemics 247

erupted 180 escaped 12 especially 79 estimate 135 even though 115 evidence 259 exactly 146 exaggerated 269 exhausted 32 exist 199 expedition 3 experts 43 exploration 4 export 201 extended 69 extremely 31



fast 212 fatal 260 fear 123 feast 212 fever 249 fields 80 finally 3 financially 70 fingerprint 190 fire (v.) 248 fits (into) 115 floating 180 flood 178 forced 154 forehead 228 forming 133 fresh 23 fuel 32



garbage 99 gathered 23 geography 22 geothermal 181 get along 4 gradually 57 grow up 69



habit 238 halfway 3 hammer 227 hampered 42 harmless 123 hazardous 100 headache 227 heartbeat 211 heights 123 helmet 42 hemisphere 3 herbs 271 heroes 4 hollow 42 household 70 humidity 89



illiterate 80 immigrants 145 import 201 improve 259 in addition 145 in general 125 in good company 156 in order to 22 incentive 42 included 22 industrialization 70 inexhaustible 199 influenza 249 inherit 270 injected 249 inland 31 institutions 249 instructors 125 intense 238 interior 3 investigating 99



jaw 238 jet lag 210 joined 22 journalist 12



keep from 171 kidney 261 knocks 114



laboratory 169 lack 23 landfills 99 last 59 layer 178 leaves .90 leeches 259 lessen 212 level 89 lifestyle 228 lifts 115 lightning 180 like 13 likely 155 limited 58 linguists 135 lives on 33 logical 123 loneliness 4 loose 212 loss 124



magic 199
majority 70
married couple 69
mate 114
mathematicians 191
matter 91
maybe 115
meaningful 133
meanwhile 250
melted 180
memorize 154
menial 260
microscopic 190

mid- 191 migraine 227 migrate 211 mild 178 miserable 249 mistake 32 modern 99 moisture 89 moldy 260 mosquitoes 248 multiple 191



natural resources 58
nearly 80
necessary 154
needles 260
negative 80
nest 114
network 41
nightmares 238
no longer 91
nonrenewable 59
nuclear 69
nutrients 90



observes 181
occurs 190
of course 80
official 79
on the other hand
100
once in a while 114
opportunities 70
opposite 156
orders 3
ordinarily 191
organization 30
oxygen 91



pain 227 passed (a law) 79 past 135

paths 90 patient 228 pattern 191 periods 238 permanent 239 permitting 156 personal 271 phobia 123 photovoltaic cell 199 physical 228 physicist 170 pick up (catch) 248 plague 248 planets 169 pleasant 145 positions 80 positive 79 pounding 227 predict 57 prefer 154 pregnant 249 prescribed 260 presents 114 pressure 42 projects 169 property 180 proved 23 provide for 32 psychologists 125 public 145 published 79

r

ran away 12
ranged 179
rate 135
rather 41
raw materials 201
real 12
realized 23
reasonable 200
rechargeable 100
recipes 271
recurring 228
recyclables 100
reduction 270
referred to 134

region 89 relatives 70 relief 238 reluctant 201 remained 13 remaining 90 remarkable 261 remind 23 remote 13 research 13 respond 154 revealed 100 rhythm 210 risk factor 269 rolling 178 roots 90 roughly 41

S

sanitation 260 satellites 170 scattered 179 science fiction 169 search party 4 secret 12 seismic 178 seismology 181 semiconductors 200 senses 154 separate 23 services 248 sewerage 260 shy 114 signal 211 silicon 200 simple 191 since 200 situation 124 skilled 22 skyscraper 144 snack 271 snakes 114 sneeze 248 snoring 239 snowflake 190 so 191 so far 170

sociologists 71 solar 170 soldiers 22 solid-state 200 sore 228 sources 59 space 146 specialists 134 species 42 spiders 114 spot 115 stabilized 71 stages 237 standard of living 58 stare 272 steady 228 stealing 144 sticks out 114 story 145 straight 113 stuttering 155 substance 270 such as 90 suffer 155 supervise 250 supplies 3 supported 12 surface 41 surgery 259 surprising 90 surrounded 12 swamps 3 sweating 238 swell 227 system 133



take care of 70 takeoff 125 tasks 70 technologies 58 temperate 210 temperatures 13 tension 228 terrifying 123 threatened 58 through 90

throughout 79
thunder 180
ticks 248
tides 211
title 144
tons 22
tools 155
traffic 124
transparent 200
trapped 190
tremendously 70
tuberculosis 248
tunnel 124
turn into 3



uneven 31 unfamiliar 271 unique 180 unsuccessful 91 up to 191



vaccination 249 valves 270 vibrations 178 victims 180 viruses 248 vision 227 vitamin 23 volcano 180 vomit 227



warning 227 waste 100 weak 31 whistles 114 wide awake 210 workforce 80



zone 113

Skills Index

ACTIVITY PAGE Sentences, 110 Speed, 26-27 Adventure trail, 52 Crossword puzzles, 109, 222 Vocabulary, 5-6, 14-15, 24-25, 33-34, 44-45, 60-61, 72-73, 81-82, 92-93, 102-103, Phrases, 165 Who said what?, 283-284 115–117, 125–126, 135–137, 146–148, 156–158, 171–173, 181–183, 192–193, **CHARTS** 202-203, 213-215, 229-230, 250-252, Antonyms, 183 262-263, 272-274 Cause and effect, 174, 254 Antonyms, 34, 103, 137, 183, 230 Dictionary research, 224 Context clues, 11, 21, 30, 41, 57, 69, 79, 89, 99, Reading, 83-84 113, 123, 133, 144, 154, 169, 178, 190, 199, Scanning, 233 210, 227, 237, 247, 259, 269, 278–279 Synonyms, 183 Synonyms, 93, 183 Word forms, 17, 37, 47, 66, 75, 86, 95, 118–119, 129, 140, 150, 159, 185, 207, 232, 244, 255, **SPEAKING** 266, 276 Discussion, 51, 163, 164, 220, 281, 282 Word stress, 285 Partner activities, 221, 285 Writing, 162, 281 **TEST-TAKING SKILLS** Writing notes, 108 Choosing item that does not belong, 126, 203 **DICTIONARY PAGE** Comprehension questions, 7, 16, 26, 36, 46, Definitions, 53-54 63-64, 74, 84, 94, 104, 118, 128, 138, 149, Dictionary research, 223-224 159, 174, 184, 194, 204, 215, 231-232, 242, 254, 264, 275 Grammar codes, 166 Word forms, 110 Fill in blanks, 5–6, 8, 9, 14–15, 17–18, 19, 24–25, Word stress, 285 27-28, 33-34, 37, 38, 39, 44-45, 47-48, 49, 54, 60-61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 72-73, 75-76, **MAPS** 81-82, 85, 86, 92-93, 95-97, 102-103, 105, Reading, 220 115–116, 119, 120, 125–126, 129, 130, **PUNCTUATION** 135–136, 140, 141, 142, 146–147, 150–151, 156-158, 160-161, 171-173, 175-176, Adverbs, 129 181–182, 185–187, 192–193, 195–196, READING 202–203, 205–206, 207, 213–215, 216, Cause and effect, 95, 174, 254 217-218, 220, 221, 229-230, 233, 234, Charts, 83-84 240-241, 243, 244-245, 250-252, 255, Comprehension, 7, 16, 26, 36, 38, 46, 63–64, 74, 256-257, 262-263, 265, 266, 272-273, 84, 94, 104, 118, 128, 138, 149, 159, 162, 174, 276-279 184, 194, 204, 215, 231-232, 242, 254, 264, Matching, 25, 34, 51, 53, 73, 82, 93, 95, 103, 116, 137, 148, 193, 230, 241, 263, 274 Main ideas, 8, 16, 26, 36, 46, 64, 74, 84, 94, 104, Multiple-choice questions, 8, 15, 16, 26, 35, 36, 106, 118, 128, 138, 149, 159, 174, 184, 194, 46, 62-63, 83-84, 103-104, 121, 127, 204, 216, 232, 242, 254, 264, 275 148–149, 173, 203–204, 221, 230–231, 253, Maps, 220 278-279, 282 Paraphrasing, 94, 138, 184 Sentence completion, 51, 110, 166, 282 Prereading activities, 2, 10, 20, 29, 40, 56, 68, 78, Sequencing, 187, 218 88, 98, 112, 122, 132, 143, 153, 168, 177, 189, Short-answer questions, 46, 85, 187, 194, 242 198, 209, 226, 236, 246, 258, 268 True/false/not enough information questions, Rereading, 27 25, 45, 73–74, 93–94, 117, 137, 158, 183–184, Scanning, 46, 85, 139, 186, 204, 233, 242

215, 241–242, 264, 274

True/false questions, 7, 107	Collocations, 39
TOPICS	Compound words, 19, 105, 196, 265
Explorers, 1–54	Connecting words
Bering: Bering Strait, 20–28	after, 161, 243
Burke and Wills: Australia, 2–9	although, 243
David-Neel: Tibet, 10–19	and, 106, 130
Ocean exploration, 40–49	before, 161, 243
Scott: South Pole, 29–39	but, 87, 130
Fear of flying, 122–131	even though, 120, 130, 218
Languages and language diversity, 132–142	since, 161, 218, 243
Left-handedness, 153–162	until, 161, 218
Medicine and health, 225–285	when, 161
Advances in medicine, 258–267	Nouns, 17–18, 36–37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 110, 118,
Cholesterol and heart disease, 268–280	119, 129, 140, 159–160, 175, 185–186, 207,
Headaches, 226–235	232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276
Health care and epidemics, 246–257	Noun substitutes, 96, 141, 175, 234
Sleep and dreams, 236–245	Suffixes, 47
Roadrunners, 112–121	Prefixes
	Negative prefixes, 195
Science, 167–224	semi-, 217
Biological clocks, 209–219	Verbs, 150
Biospheres in space, 168–176	Prepositions, 28, 48, 120, 217–218, 265
Earthquakes, 177–188	Sentence parts, 36
Photovoltaic cells, 198–208 Snow and hail, 189–197	Suffixes
	Adjectives, 75
Skyscrapers, 143–152	Nouns, 47
World issues, 55–108	Verbs, 150
Families, 68–77	Verbs, 17–18, 27, 37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 110, 119,
Garbage Project, 98–106	129, 140, 159–160, 175, 185–186, 207,
Population growth, 56–67	232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276
Rain forests, 88–97	Adjectives following verbs, 235
Women, 78–87	Irregular verbs, 65, 277–278
VIEWING	Prefixes, 150
Partner activities, 50, 107, 163	Regular verbs, 166
Video highlights, 50-51, 107-108, 163-164,	Suffixes, 150
220–221, 281–282	Two-word verbs, 8, 38, 53–54, 64, 105, 142,
WORD CTUDY	151, 186–187, 205, 256, 265, 278
WORD STUDY	WRITING
Active and passive sentences, 139	Charts, 108, 162, 174, 183, 224, 233, 254, 281, 285
Adjectives, 17–18, 37, 47, 65, 66, 75, 86, 95–96,	Compositions, 9, 19, 28, 39, 49, 67, 77, 87, 97,
108, 110, 119, 129, 140, 159–160, 185–186,	106, 121, 131, 142, 152, 162, 176, 188, 197,
207, 232– 233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276 Adjectives following verbs, 235	208, 219, 235, 245, 257, 267, 280
ed form, 216	Guided writing, 9, 19, 28, 39, 49, 67, 77, 87, 97,
-ing form, 216	106, 121, 131, 142, 152, 162, 176, 188, 197,
Participles, 65	208, 219, 235, 245, 257, 267, 280
Sentence forms, 206	Lists, 163
Suffixes, 75	Paraphrasing, 94, 138, 184
Adverbs, 17–18, 37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 119, 140,	Reasons for statements, 208
159–160, 185–186, 207, 232–233, 244–245,	Sentences, 7, 51, 64, 74, 84, 87, 94, 104, 106, 108,
	128, 131, 138, 149, 159, 165, 174, 184, 194,
255, 266, 276 -ly ending, 128	197, 204, 216, 232, 235, 242, 254, 257, 264,
Punctuation, 129	275
Articles, 9, 18, 48–49, 67, 76, 85–86, 96–97, 130,	Summarizing, 131, 152, 187, 196, 257, 267, 279
141, 151, 175–176, 195–196, 234, 256–257	





Reading & Vocabulary Development Series

Facts & Figures

Text	1-4130-0445-8
Audio CD	
Audio Tape	
CNN® Video for Books 1 & 2	1-4130-0610-8
CNN® DVD for Books 1 & 2	1-4130-1587-5
Answer Key and Video Transcript	
for Books 1 & 2	1-4130-0609-4
Assessment CD-ROM with	
ExamView® Pro for Books 1 & 2	1-4130-0613-2

Thoughts & Notions

-6
-1
X
-8
-5
4
-2

Cause & Effect

Text	1-4130-0447-4
Audio CD	1-4130-1330-9
Audio Tape	1-4130-1331-7
CNN ^e Video for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-0611-6
CNN* DVD for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-1588-3
Answer Key and Video Transcript	
for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-0612-4
Assessment CD-ROM with	
ExamView* Pro for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-1327-9

Concepts & Comments NEW LEVEL!

Text	1-4130-0448-2
Audio CD	1-4130-1328-7
Audio Tape	1-4130-1329-5
CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-0611-6
CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-1588-3
Answer Key and Video Transcript	
for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-0612-4
Assessment CD-ROM with	
ExamView ² Pro for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-1327-9

www.irLanguage.com

ELT INTERNATIONAL CONTACT INFORMATION

Asia

(Including Japan and India)

Thomson Learning
5 Shenton Way #01-01
UIC Building
Singapore 068808
Tel: 65-6410-1200
Fax: 65-6410-1208
info@thomsonlearning.com.sg
www.thomsonlearningasia.com

Australia/New Zealand

Thomson Learning

102 Dodds Street Southbank, Victoria Australia 3006 Tel: 03-9685-4111 Fax: 03-9685-4199 Toll Free 1-800-654-831 www.thomsonlearning.com.au

Canada

Thomson Nelson 1120 Birchmount Road Toronto, Ontario M1K 5G4 Tel: 416-752-9100 Fax: 416-752-9646 www.nelson.com

Latin America

Thomson Learning Seneca, 53 Colonia Polanco 11560 México D.F México

Tel: 52-55-5281-2906 Fax: 52-55-5281-2656 www.thomsonlearning.com.mx

UK/Europe/Middle East/Africa

Thomson Learning
High Holborn House
50/51 Bedford Row
London, WC1R 4LR
United Kingdom
Tel: 44-207-067-2500
Fax: 44-207-067-2600

www.thomsonlearning.co.uk

Spain/Portugal

Thomson Paraninfo Calle Magallanes, 25 28015 Madrid

Tel: 34-91-446-3350 Fax: 34-91-445-6218 www.paraninfo.es For product information in the United States, desk or examination copy requests, or for the name of the Heinle Specialist in your area, call toll-free:

877-633-3375

or send requests to:

Thomson/Heinle 25 Thomson Place Boston, MA 02210 Fax: (617) 289-7844

Examination and desk copy requests must be on school letterhead and include:

- Name
- School
- · School Address with Zip Code
- Phone Number
- Enrollment
- Decision Date
- Book Title and ISBN

Please allow 3–4 weeks for delivery.

For information about:

- · Placing an order
- Prices
- Availability of material
- Delivery

Call: 800-354-9706

Send orders to:

TL Distribution Center Attn: Order Fulfillment 10650 Toebben Drive Independence, KY 41051

PUBNET

Easy Link: 6290-5841

elt.thomson.com

Reading & Vocabulary Development

www.irLanguage.com





FOURTH EDITION

Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

The new edition of this popular series helps students develop reading skills and systematically increase their active vocabulary from 1,300 to 2,000 words.

- PROVEN systematic pedagogy builds students' reading comprehension.
- NEW and UPDATED thematic readings (five per unit) recycle vocabulary, sentence structure, and content knowledge.
- UPDATED and carefully designed pre- and post-reading activities expand students' skills.
- UPDATED dictionary work builds students' vocabulary.
- NEW Assessment CD-ROM with ExamView® Pro allows instructors to quickly and easily create custom tests and quizzes.
- Audio components contain the readings.
- CNN® clips expand vocabulary and provide authentic input.
- Online activities! elt.thomson.com/readingandvocabulary

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Cause & Effect

Text	1-4130-0447-4
Audio CD	1-4130-1330-9
Audio Tape	1-4130-1331-7
CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-0611-6
CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-1588-3
Answer Key and Video Transcript for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-0612-4
Assessment CD-ROM with ExamView® Pro for Books 3 & 4	1-4130-1327-9

مرجع زبان ایرانیان www.irLanguage.com

Discover the entire Reading & Vocabulary Development series



Facts & Figures 1-4130-0445-8



Thoughts & Notions 1-4130-0446-6



Cause & Effect 1-4130-0447-4



Concepts & Comments 1-4130-0448-2

International Student Edition



Thomson ELT, a part of the Thomson Company, is a leading provider of materials for English Language teaching and learning throughout the world.



Visit Thomson online at elt.thomson.com